

LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR HIGH SCHOOLS

BY

ROBERT J. HENLE, S. J.

FORMER INSTRUCTOR IN CLASSICS
ST. LOUIS UNIVERSITY HIGH SCHOOL



REVISED EDITION

CHICAGO, ILLINOIS
LOYOLA UNIVERSITY PRESS
1945

COPYRIGHT, 1945
LOYOLA UNIVERSITY PRESS
CHICAGO, ILLINOIS

D-PPLE-RP-OE

Printed in the United States of America

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART 1: FORMS

	Page
INTRODUCTORY	1
NOUNS	3
ADJECTIVES	14
ADVERBS	25
NUMERALS	28
PRONOUNS	32
VERBS	40
THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS	43
ACTIVE VOICE	43
PASSIVE VOICE	55
- <i>IO</i> VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION	67
DEPONENT VERBS	71
IRREGULAR VERBS	76

PART 2: SYNTAX

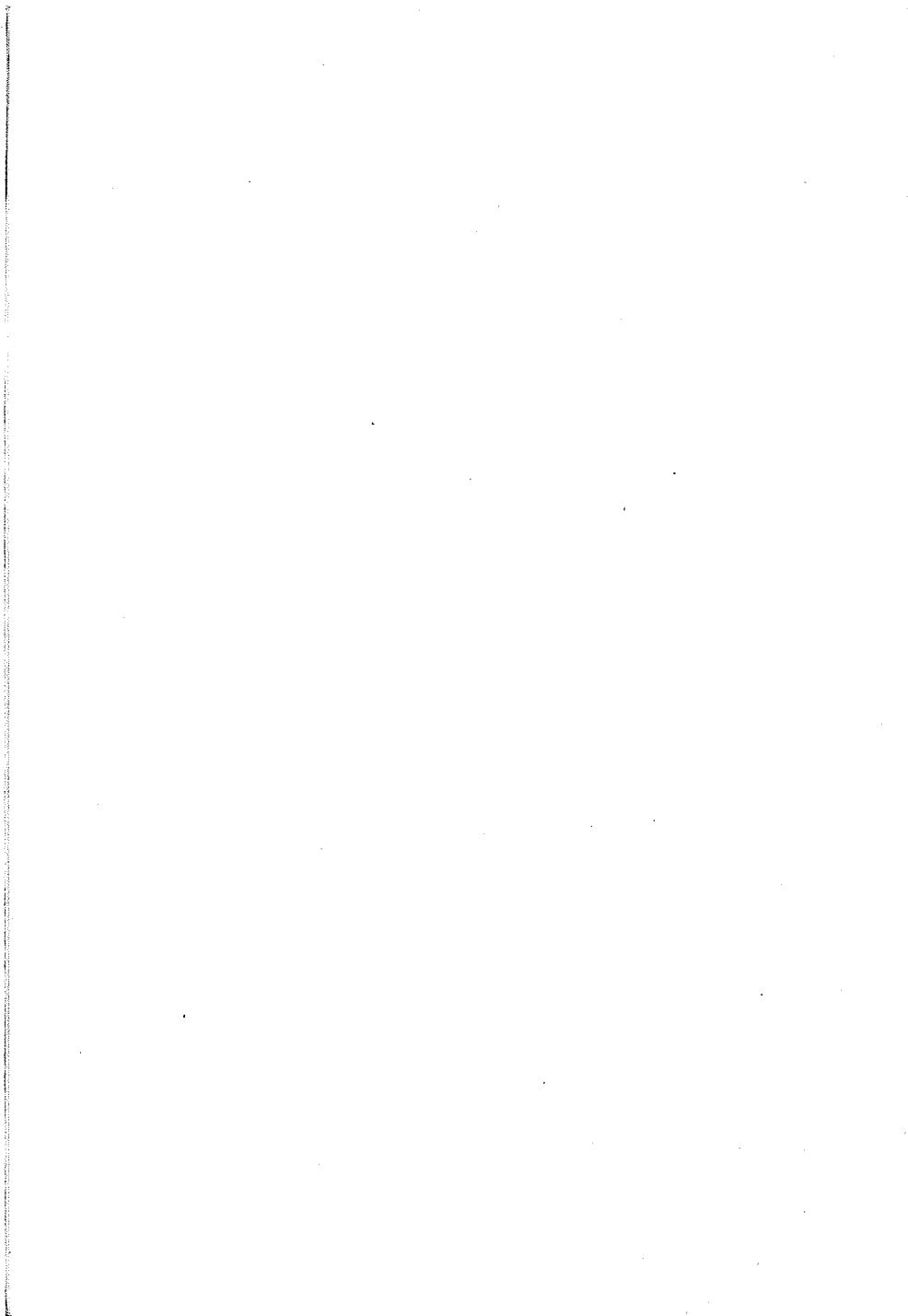
ORDER OF WORDS	84
RULES OF AGREEMENT	86
MAIN CLAUSES	89
USE OF THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE	89
KINDS OF MAIN CLAUSES	93
STATEMENTS	93
DIRECT QUESTIONS	94
DELIBERATIVE QUESTIONS	96
WISHES	96
JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE	98
COMMANDS IN THE SECOND PERSON	98
HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE	99
CONCESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE	99

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES	100
TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES	100
TENSE BY SENSE	100
TENSE BY SEQUENCE	101
TENSES IN STATEMENTS OF GENERAL TRUTHS OR RE- PEATED ACTION	106
ADVERBIAL CLAUSES	109
PURPOSE CLAUSES	109
RESULT CLAUSES	110
TEMPORAL CLAUSES	112
CAUSAL CLAUSES	117
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	120
CLAUSES EXPRESSING A PROVISIO OR A CONDITIONAL WISH	124
ADVERSATIVE AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES	124
CLAUSES OF COMPARISON	125
CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON	128
SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION	129
ADJECTIVE CLAUSES	130
RELATIVE CLAUSES	130
CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSES	135
NOUN CLAUSES	136
NOUN <i>UT</i> -CLAUSES	136
NOUN CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING	137
NOUN <i>NĒ</i> -CLAUSES	138
NOUN CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY <i>QUŌMINUS</i>	139
<i>QUĪN</i> -CLAUSES	140
NOUN <i>QUOD</i> -CLAUSES	141
INDIRECT QUESTIONS	142
INDIRECT DISCOURSE	143
THE CASES	148
THE NOMINATIVE	148
THE VOCATIVE	148
THE GENITIVE AS AN ADJECTIVE-EQUIVALENT	149
THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE	149
THE EXPLANATORY GENITIVE	149

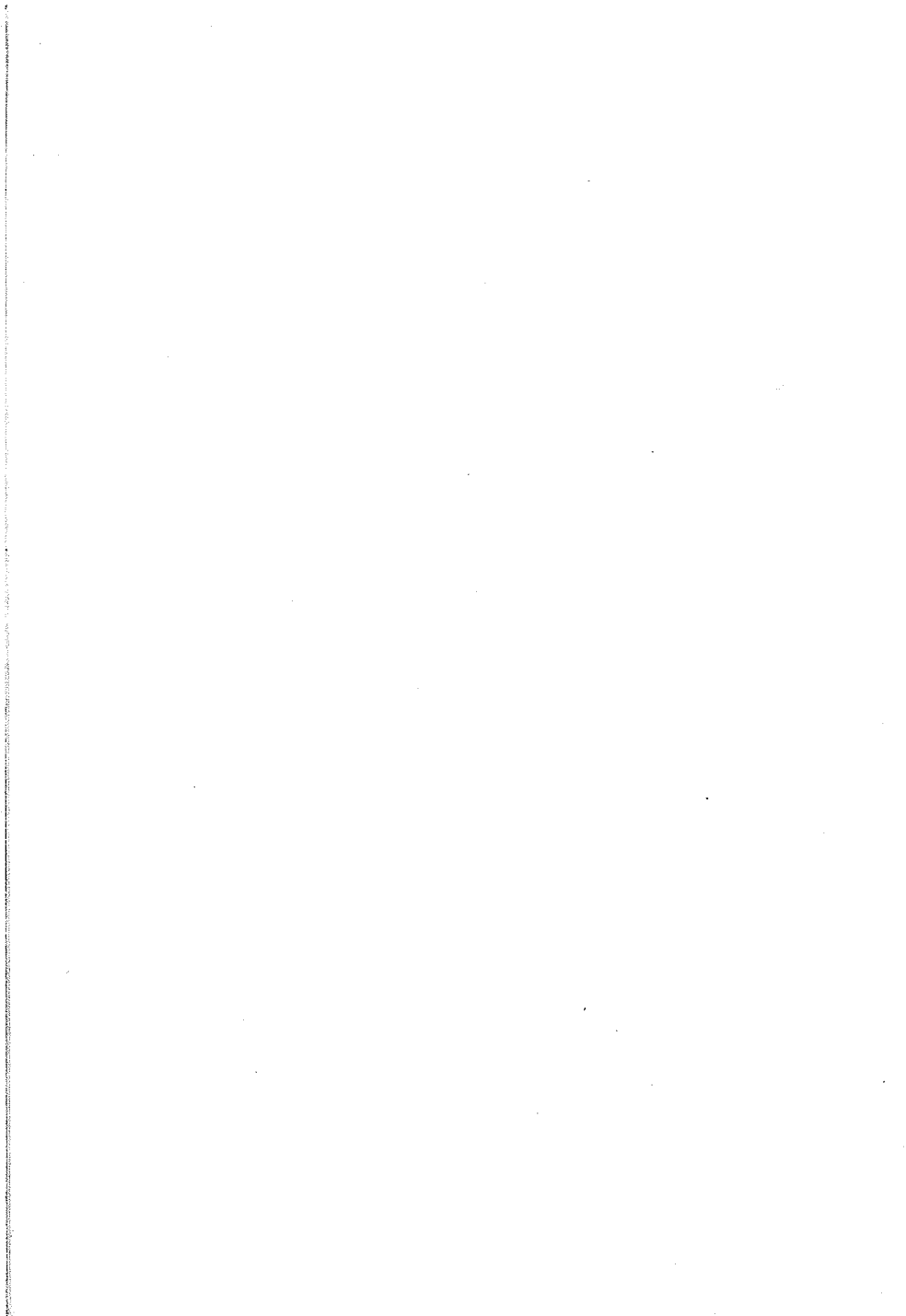
THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE	150
THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE	151
THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE	151
THE DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE	153
THE GENITIVE AS AN ADVERB-EQUIVALENT	155
THE GENITIVE OF INDEFINITE VALUE	155
THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS	156
THE GENITIVE OF THE CHARGE	159
OTHER VERBS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE	159
GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	160
THE DATIVE	162
THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION	162
THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE	162
THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE	163
THE DOUBLE DATIVE	164
DATIVE OF AGENCY	164
THE DATIVE OF LIMIT OF MOTION	165
THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT	165
THE DATIVE AFTER COMPOUND VERBS	165
THE DATIVE AFTER INTRANSITIVE VERBS	166
DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	167
DATIVE WITH VERBS OF SEPARATION	167
THE ACCUSATIVE AS PART OF THE PREDICATE	168
THE ACCUSATIVE AS OBJECT	168
THE DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE	168
ACCUSATIVE OF NEUTER PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	170
THE COGNATE ACCUSATIVE	171
THE ACCUSATIVE AS AN ADVERB-EQUIVALENT	172
THE ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS	172
THE ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION	172
THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE AND TIME	172
THE ABLATIVE AS AN ADJECTIVE-EQUIVALENT	173
THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION	173
THE ABLATIVE AS AN ADVERB-EQUIVALENT	173
THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT	173
THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS	174

THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION	174
THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER	175
THE ABLATIVE OF RESPECT	175
THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE	176
THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT	176
THE ABLATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	177
THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON	177
THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE	178
THE ABLATIVE AS OBJECT	179
THE ABLATIVE OF PRICE	179
PRONOUNS	180
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS	180
REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	182
THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN	184
<i>ĪDEM, EADEM, IDEM</i>	186
SOME	186
ONE OTHER (ANOTHER)	188
ONE	189
OTHER	190
EACH	191
ANYONE; ANY	193
ADJECTIVES	195
SPECIAL USES OF ADJECTIVES	195
COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES	196
SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES	197
VERBAL NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	198
THE SUPINE	198
IN <i>-UM</i>	198
IN <i>-Ū</i>	198
THE GERUND	199
THE GERUNDIVE	200
THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION	200
THE ATTRIBUTIVE GERUNDIVE AS A SUBSTITUTE FOR THE GERUND	201
THE GERUNDIVE AS A PREDICATE ADJECTIVE WITH <i>SUM</i>	203

THE GERUNDIVE AS A PREDICATE ADJECTIVE WITH OTHER VERBS	206
TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE AND THE PARTICIPLE	207
TENSE BY RELATION	207
THE INFINITIVE	210
THE INFINITIVE IN NOUN CONSTRUCTIONS	210
THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE AFTER VERBS OF SAYING, THINKING, AND THE LIKE	213
THE INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS	216
HISTORICAL INFINITIVE	216
THE INFINITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES	216
THE PARTICIPLE	217
THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	219
RULES FOR PLACE	221
WHERE?	221
WHENCE?	221
WHITHER?	221
RULES FOR TIME	223
HOW LONG?	223
WHEN?	223
WITHIN?	223
HOW LONG AGO?	224
HOW LONG BEFORE OR AFTER?	224
PREPOSITIONS	225
METHOD OF DIAGRAMMING	236
APPENDIX	241
PRONUNCIATION	241
NOTES ON VERBS	243
INDEX	245



LATIN GRAMMAR



PART 1

FORMS

INTRODUCTORY

- 1 The Alphabet. The Latin alphabet has no *w* or *y*; otherwise it is the same as the English.

Pronunciation.¹ The Latin letters are pronounced as follows:

- 2 Vowels: *Long* *Short*
- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>ā</i> as in <i>father</i> ; | <i>a</i> as in <i>facility</i> ; |
| <i>ē</i> as in <i>they</i> ; | <i>e</i> as in <i>get</i> ; |
| <i>ī</i> as in <i>machine</i> ; | <i>i</i> as in <i>fit</i> ; |
| <i>ō</i> as in <i>no</i> ; | <i>o</i> as in <i>obey</i> ; |
| <i>ū</i> as in <i>rule</i> . | <i>u</i> as in <i>put</i> . |

- 3 Note: Very often in practice the difference between the long and short vowels is ignored, all of them being given the quality of long vowels. In reading poetry a quantitative difference alone is then maintained between long and short vowels.

- 4 Diphthongs:
- | | |
|-----------|----------------------------------|
| <i>ae</i> | } like <i>e</i> in <i>they</i> ; |
| <i>oe</i> | |
| <i>au</i> | like <i>ou</i> in <i>out</i> . |

- 5 Consonants:
- Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English, but *c* and *g* are soft before *e*, *i*, *ae*, *oe*; otherwise hard.
- Hard *c* as in *cat*; soft *c* as in *cell*.
- Hard *g* as in *gun*; soft *g* as in *germ*.
- j* is pronounced like *y* as in *yet*.

¹For the Roman and Italian systems see Nos. 1018-19. The system here given is called the Continental or Traditional System.

Division into Syllables.

- 6 a. A single consonant goes with the following vowel.
mā/ter; nau/ta; nō/men
- 7 b. Two or more consonants are divided after the first.
por/ta; exer/citus; pul/chra
- 8 Note: But when a mute (c, g, p, b, t, d) or f is followed by r or l, both consonants go with the following vowel.
la/crima; a/grum; pa/trem; va/fra; locu/plēs

Accent.

- 9 a. In words of two syllables the accent is on the first.
vía; béllum
- 10 b. In words of more than two syllables, if the second last syllable is long it is accented; otherwise the accent is on the third last syllable.
vidérunt; ágmine

Quantity of Syllables.

- 11 a. A syllable is short if it contains a vowel that is short by nature or that is followed by another vowel or diphthong.
regere; gloriā
- 12 b. A syllable is long if it contains a vowel that is long by nature¹ or a vowel that is followed by two consonants other than a mute (c, g, p, b, t, d) or ~~x~~ followed by a liquid (r, l).
studēre; regendus
- 13 Note: x and z each count as two consonants (cs and ds); h and the u in qu do not count as consonants.

¹In this GRAMMAR and in its companion volumes all vowels long by nature are marked, as: studēre. Otherwise they are unmarked.

que or ce added
on are counted
as syllables -

1 syllable - cui, huic

NOUNS

- 14 Nouns have gender, number, case, and declension.
- 15 Gender. There are three genders in Latin: masculine, feminine, neuter.
- 16 All nouns meaning individual male persons are masculine.
- 17 All nouns meaning individual female persons are feminine.
- 18 The gender of other nouns must be learned from their declension or from the vocabularies.
- 19 Number. There are two numbers in Latin: singular and plural.
- 20 The singular speaks of one: *via, a road*.
- 21 The plural speaks of more than one: *viae, roads*.
- 22 Case. There are six cases in Latin:
- Nominative: the case of the Subject.
 - Genitive: the case of the Possessor.
 - Dative: the case of the Indirect Object; the 'to' or 'for' case.
 - Accusative: the case of the Direct Object.
 - Ablative: the 'by-with-from' case [used frequently with prepositions].
 - Vocative: the case of the Person Addressed.
- 23 Declension. Declension consists in adding the proper ENDINGS to the STEM to show the different genders, numbers, and cases.
- 24 Stem. The stem is found by dropping the ENDING of the GENITIVE SINGULAR.
- vi-ae, stem: vi-*

- 25 **The Five Declensions.** There are five declensions in Latin. They can be distinguished by the endings of the genitive singular.

1	2	3	4	5
-ae	-ī	-is	-ūs	-eī
vi-ae	serv-ī	lēg-is	port-ūs	r-eī

- 26 **How to Decline a Noun.** The nominative, genitive, and gender of a noun determine which model it follows. Add the endings of that model to the stem.

Note:

- 27 a. The stem is that part of the word which remains the same in spelling throughout the declension. It gives the meaning of the word. The endings show what the word does in the sentence, whether it is the subject, direct object, indirect object, etc.
- 28 b. The vocative of all nouns and adjectives is always like the nominative except in singular nouns in -us of the second declension: these have -e. Serv-e! *Slave!* **Exceptions:** Proper nouns in -ius and filius, son, have only ī in the vocative singular. Vergilius, voc. Vergilī; filius, voc. filiī. The vocative singular of Deus, God, is Deus; the vocative masculine singular of meus is mī; filiī mī! *my son!* amici mei!
- 29 c. The accusative of neuter nouns and adjectives is always like the nominative.
- 30 d. Names of towns, and domus, home, and rūs, country, have another case—the locative—expressing place where. In singulars of the first and second declensions the locative is like the genitive: Romae, at Rome. In all others it is like the ablative: Carthāgine (Carthāgō, Carthāginis), at Carthage. (But rūs, country, has rūri or rūre, in the country.)

All in plural agree with N.S.

31 The First Declension.

	Form	Meaning	Use
S.	Nom. terr-a	land, the (a) ¹ land	subject
	Gen. terr-ae	of the (a) land	possessive
	Dat. terr-ae	to or for the (a) land	indirect object
	Acc. terr-am	the (a) land	direct object
	Abl. terr-ā	by, with, from the (a) land	
P.	Nom. terr-ae	lands, the lands	subject
	Gen. terr-ārum	of the lands	possessive
	Dat. terr-īs	to or for the lands	indirect object
	Acc. terr-ās	lands, the lands	direct object
	Abl. terr-īs	by, with, from the lands	

Gender:²

- 32 a. All nouns naming individual male persons are masculine.
nauta, ae, a sailor, masculine. (Sailors are usually men.)
- 33 b. All others are feminine.
terra, ae, land, feminine.

¹There is no article, definite (*the*) or indefinite (*a, an*) in Latin. *Terra*, therefore, translates 'land,' 'a land,' 'the land.'

²No gender will be indicated in the vocabularies for nouns following the rules given in the GRAMMAR; all others will have their gender indicated and should be so learned.

34 Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension.

	Form	Meaning	Use
S.	Nom. serv-us	the slave ¹	subject
	Gen. serv-ī ²	of the slave, the slave's	possessive
	Dat. serv-ō	to or for the slave	indirect object
	Acc. serv-um	the slave	direct object
	Abl. serv-ō	by, with, from the slave	
P.	Nom. serv-ī	the slaves	subject
	Gen. serv-ōrum	of the slaves, the slaves'	possessive
	Dat. serv-īs	to or for the slaves	indirect object
	Acc. serv-ōs	the slaves	direct object
	Abl. serv-īs	by, with, from the slaves	

35 Gender: Generally masculine.

36 Note: Proper names in -ius and filius, son, form their vocative singular in -ī. Vergilius, Vergilī; filius, fili.

Chapter 16 - 101

¹Servus, of course, may be translated either 'slave,' 'the slave,' or 'a slave.'²Nouns in -ius and -ium more properly have ī in the genitive in place of ū (as filius, gen. fili; ingenium, gen. ingenī) but in the first two years of this course the full form in ū will be used. The accent in the contracted form remains where it was in the uncontracted form: ingēnū, ingēnī.

37 Neuter Nouns of the Second Declension.

		<i>Form</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Use</i>
S.	Nom.	bell-um	the war ¹	subject
	Gen.	bell-i	of the war	possessive
	Dat.	bell-ō	to or for the war	indirect object
	Acc.	bell-um	the war	direct object
	Abl.	bell-ō	by, with, from the war	
P.	Nom.	bell-a	the wars	subject
	Gen.	bell-ōrum	of the wars	possessive
	Dat.	bell-is	to or for the wars	indirect object
	Acc.	bell-a	the wars	direct object
	Abl.	bell-is	by, with, from the wars	

38 Gender: All neuter.²

- 39 Note: The accusative is like the nominative in all neuter nouns and adjectives. Thus, singular nom. bellum, acc. bellum; plural nom. bella, acc. bella. (Cf. flūmen, No. 64, gravis, e, No. 78, etc.)

¹*Bellum*, of course, may be translated 'war,' 'the war,' or 'a war.'

²There are no exceptions.

- 40 **Vir, virī, man,** and words like **ager, agrī, field,** and **puer, puerī, boy,** belong to the second declension. (Note the genitive in **-ī**.) They are declined like **servus** except in the nominative (and vocative) singular. Thus:

41	vir	42	ager	43	puer
	vir-ī		agr-ī		puer-ī
	vir-ō		agr-ō		puer-ō
	vir-um		agr-um		puer-um
	vir-ō		agr-ō		puer-ō
	vir-ī		agr-ī		puer-ī
	vir-ōrum		agr-ōrum		puer-ōrum
	vir-īs		agr-īs		puer-īs
	vir-ōs		agr-ōs		puer-ōs
	vir-īs		agr-īs		puer-īs

- 44 **Deus, ī, God,** has the following peculiarities:

<i>Vocative singular:</i>	Deus
<i>Nominative plural:</i>	dī
<i>Dative plural:</i>	dīs
<i>Ablative plural:</i>	dīs

- 45 **The Third Declension.** The nominative singular of the third declension has no model ending. Thus *lēx*, *law*, *pars*, *part*, *flūmen*, *river*, *hostis*, *enemy*, are all nouns of the third declension. The genitive ending (for the third declension, always *-is*) shows the declension and gives the stem.

Gender:¹

- 46 Nouns naming individual male persons are masculine:
mīles, *mīlitis*, *m.*, *soldier*
- 47 Nouns naming individual female persons are feminine:
māter, *mātris*, *f.*, *mother*
- 48 **Note:** These two rules (Nos. 46, 47) should always be applied before Nos. 49 to 52. Thus *mīles* would be feminine by the SOX rule (No. 50), but rule No. 46 is applied first, hence *mīles* is masculine.
- 49 Nouns ending in *-er*, *-or* (ERROR) are masculine.
- 50 Nouns ending in *-s*, *-o*, *-x* (SOX) are feminine.
- 51 Nouns ending in *-l*, *-a*, *-n*, *-c*, *-e*, *-t* (LANCET) are neuter.
- 52 **Note:** But masculīnī generis
are words in *-os*, *-nis*, *-quis*, and *-cis*,
in *-es* (*-itis*) and *-ex* (*-icis*);
as neuter mark the *-us* (with *-ris*).
- 53 **Declension.** First find the gender of the noun. Then find the stem from the genitive.
- 54 For masculine and feminine nouns, add the endings of *lēx* or *pars* according to the rules in Nos. 59-63.
- 55 For neuter nouns add the endings of *flūmen*.²
- 56 The vocative is always like the nominative.

¹When the gender of nouns follows rules Nos. 46 to 51, no gender will be given in the companion volumes; thus, *pars*, *partis* (sox). When nouns follow rule No. 52 or are altogether exceptional the gender will be given, thus, *tempus*, *temporis*, *n.*

²For the few exceptions see the footnote on No. 64.

Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Third Declension.

57

S.	Nom.	<i>lēx</i>	<i>the law</i>
	Gen.	<i>lēg-is</i>	<i>of the law</i>
	Dat.	<i>lēg-ī</i>	<i>to (for) the law</i>
	Acc.	<i>lēg-em</i>	<i>the law</i>
	Abl.	<i>lēg-e</i>	<i>by, etc., the law</i>

58

S.	Nom.	<i>lēx</i>	<i>the law</i>	<i>pars</i>	<i>the part</i>
	Gen.	<i>lēg-is</i>	<i>of the law</i>	<i>part-is</i>	<i>of the part</i>
	Dat.	<i>lēg-ī</i>	<i>to (for) the law</i>	<i>part-ī</i>	<i>to (for) the part</i>
	Acc.	<i>lēg-em</i>	<i>the law</i>	<i>part-em</i>	<i>the part</i>
	Abl.	<i>lēg-e</i>	<i>by, etc., the law</i>	<i>part-e</i>	<i>by, etc., the part</i>

P.	Nom.	<i>lēg-ēs</i>	<i>the laws</i>	<i>part-ēs</i>	<i>the parts</i>
	Gen.	<i>lēg-um</i>	<i>of the laws</i>	<i>part-ium</i>	<i>of the parts</i>
	Dat.	<i>lēg-ibus</i>	<i>to (for) the laws</i>	<i>part-ibus</i>	<i>to (for) the parts</i>
	Acc.	<i>lēg-ēs</i>	<i>the laws</i>	<i>part-ēs</i>	<i>the parts</i>
	Abl.	<i>lēg-ibus</i>	<i>by, etc., the laws</i>	<i>part-ibus</i>	<i>by, etc., the parts</i>

59 Note: All masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension are declined like *lēx* except the following nouns which have *-ium* in the genitive plural like *part-ium*:

- 60 1. Nouns that have the same number of syllables in the genitive singular as in the nominative singular, as: *hostis*, *hostis* (*host-ium*), *enemy*.
- 61 2. Nouns whose stem ends in two consonants, as: *gēns*, *gentis*, *tribe*, *stem*, *gent-*, hence *gentium*.

Exceptions:

- 62 a. With *-um* instead of *-ium*: *senum*, *patrum*, *mēsum*, *mātrum*, *canum*, *juvenum*, and *frātrum*.¹
- 63 b. With *-ium* instead of *-um*: *vīrium*, *lītium*, *faucium*, *Penātium*, *imbrium* and *nivium*, *Samnītium*, *optimātium*.²

¹of old men, fathers, months and mothers, of dogs and youths, and brothers.

²of strength and quarrels, of jaws and household gods, of rains and snows, of Samnites and aristocrats.

64 Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension.

S.	Nom.	flūmen ¹	<i>the river</i>
	Gen.	flūmin-is	<i>of the river</i>
	Dat.	flūmin-ī	<i>to or for the river</i>
	Acc.	flūmen	<i>the river</i>
	Abl.	flūmin-e	<i>by, with, from the river</i>
P.	Nom.	flūmin-a	<i>the rivers</i>
	Gen.	flūmin-um	<i>of the rivers</i>
	Dat.	flūmin-ibus	<i>to or for the rivers</i>
	Acc.	flūmin-a	<i>the rivers</i>
	Abl.	flūmin-ibus	<i>by, with, from the rivers</i>

¹All neuter nouns of the third declension are declined like *flūmen* except the very few which end their nominative with *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*. These have *-ī* in the ablative singular, *-ia* in the nominative and accusative, plural, and *-ium* in the genitive plural. Thus *mare*, *maris* has ablative singular *mar-ī*, nominative and accusative plural *mar-ia*, and genitive plural *mar-ium*.

65 The Fourth Declension.

S.	Nom.	port-us	<i>the harbor</i>
	Gen.	port-ūs	<i>of the harbor</i>
	Dat.	port-uī	<i>to or for the harbor</i>
	Acc.	port-um	<i>the harbor</i>
	Abl.	port-ū	<i>by, with, from the harbor</i>
P.	Nom.	port-ūs	<i>the harbors</i>
	Gen.	port-uum	<i>of the harbors</i>
	Dat.	port-ibus	<i>to or for the harbors</i>
	Acc.	port-ūs	<i>the harbors</i>
	Abl.	port-ibus	<i>by, with, from the harbors</i>

66 **Gender:** All masculine except *manus, ūs, f., hand, domus, ūs, f., house*, and a few others.

67 **Domus, ūs, f., house, home**, shows peculiarities in the underlined forms.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs	<u>domōrum</u> or domuum
<i>Dat.</i>	domuī	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	<u>domōs</u> or domūs
<i>Abl.</i>	<u>domō</u>	domibus

68 The locative is *domī, at home*.

69 The Fifth Declension.

S.	Nom.	rēs	the thing
	Gen.	r-eī	of the thing
	Dat.	r-eī	to or for the thing
	Acc.	r-em	the thing
	Abl.	r-ē	by, with, from the thing
P.	Nom.	r-ēs	the things
	Gen.	r-ērum	of the things
	Dat.	r-ēbus	to or for the things
	Acc.	r-ēs	the things
	Abl.	r-ēbus	by, with, from the things

70 **Gender:** All feminine except *diēs*, *diēī* which is generally masculine. In the singular, however, when it means a set date or a "period of time" even *diēs* is often feminine.

71 **Note:** The genitive and dative singular ending of the fifth declension is *ēī* instead of *eī* when the stem ends in a vowel, as *diēs*, stem, *di*, therefore *di-ēī*.

ADJECTIVES

72 Adjectives in *-us* of the First and Second Declensions.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	like	like	like
	<i>servus</i>	<i>porta</i>	<i>bellum</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i> magn-us	magn-a	magn-um
	<i>Gen.</i> magn-ī	magn-ae	magn-ī
	<i>Dat.</i> magn-ō	magn-ae	magn-ō
	<i>Acc.</i> magn-um	magn-am	magn-um
	<i>Abl.</i> magn-ō	magn-ā	magn-ō
P.	<i>Nom.</i> magn-ī	magn-ae	magn-a
	<i>Gen.</i> magn-ōrum	magn-ārum	magn-ōrum
	<i>Dat.</i> magn-īs	magn-īs	magn-īs
	<i>Acc.</i> magn-ōs	magn-ās	magn-a
	<i>Abl.</i> magn-īs	magn-īs	magn-īs

73 How to Decline an Adjective.

1. Learn the nominative and genitive¹ from the vocabularies.
2. These show what model the adjective follows.
3. Add the endings of this model to the stem.

¹The genitive of adjectives is not given in vocabularies when it is clear from the nominative, as *magnus, a, um* (stem, *magn-*).

74 Adjectives in *-er* of the First and Second Declensions.

There are two other kinds of adjectives in the first and second declensions:

miser, miser-a, miser-um (stem, *miser-*), *wretched*

integer, integr-a, integr-um (stem, *integr-*), *fresh*

These adjectives have the same endings as *magnus* except in the nominative singular masculine (*miser, integer*).

		<i>Masc.</i> like <i>puer</i>	<i>Fem.</i> like <i>porta</i>	<i>Neut.</i> like <i>bellum</i>
75	S.	<i>Nom.</i> MISER <i>Gen.</i> miser-ī <i>Dat.</i> miser-ō <i>Acc.</i> miser-um <i>Abl.</i> miser-ō	miser-a miser-ae miser-ae miser-am miser-ā	miser-um miser-ī miser-ō miser-um miser-ō
	P.	<i>Nom.</i> miser-ī <i>Gen.</i> miser-ōrum <i>Dat.</i> miser-īs <i>Acc.</i> miser-ōs <i>Abl.</i> miser-īs	miser-ae miser-ārum miser-īs miser-ās miser-īs	miser-a miser-ōrum miser-īs miser-a miser-īs
		<i>Masc.</i> like <i>ager</i>	<i>Fem.</i> like <i>porta</i>	<i>Neut.</i> like <i>bellum</i>
76	S.	<i>Nom.</i> INTEGER <i>Gen.</i> integr-ī <i>Dat.</i> integr-ō <i>Acc.</i> integr-um <i>Abl.</i> integr-ō	integr-a integr-ae integr-ae integr-am integr-ā	integr-um integr-ī integr-ō integr-um integr-ō
	P.	<i>Nom.</i> integr-ī <i>Gen.</i> integr-ōrum <i>Dat.</i> integr-īs <i>Acc.</i> integr-ōs <i>Abl.</i> integr-īs	integr-ae integr-ārum integr-īs integr-ās integr-īs	integr-a integr-ōrum integr-īs integr-a integr-īs

77 Adjectives in *-is, -is, -e* of the Third Declension.

The most important kind of adjectives in the third declension has *-is, -is, -e* in the nominative.

Gravis, e,¹ *heavy, severe, serious*, is declined thus:

78		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	<i>S.</i>	<i>Nom.</i> grav-is	grav-is	grav-e
		<i>Gen.</i> grav-is	grav-is	grav-is
		<i>Dat.</i> grav-ī	grav-ī	grav-ī
		<i>Acc.</i> grav-em	grav-em	grav-e
		<i>Abl.</i> grav-ī	grav-ī	grav-ī
	<i>P.</i>	<i>Nom.</i> grav-ēs	grav-ēs	grav-ia
		<i>Gen.</i> grav-ium	grav-ium	grav-ium
		<i>Dat.</i> grav-ibus	grav-ibus	grav-ibus
		<i>Acc.</i> grav-ēs	grav-ēs	grav-ia
		<i>Abl.</i> grav-ibus	grav-ibus	grav-ibus

79 Third Declension Adjectives of Three Endings.

ācer, ācris, ācre,² *sharp, keen, eager* (stem, *ācr-*),
celer, celeris, celere,² *swift* (stem, *celer-*).

These are declined like *gravis, e*, except in *one* case—the nominative singular masculine (*ācer, celer*). Therefore:

a. Find the stem from the feminine, thus:

ācris; stem, *ācr-*; *celeris*; stem, *celer-*.

b. Add the endings of *gravis, e*.

¹Adjectives of this kind will be given in the vocabularies thus: *gravis, e*, since the stem (*grav-*) is clear from the nominative.

²Adjectives of this class will always be given in the vocabularies thus: *ācer, ācris, ācre*. The stem can be derived from the feminine: *ācris*; stem, *ācr-*.

80	S.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
		Nom. ĀCER	ācr-is	ācr-e
		Gen. ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-is
		Dat. ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī
		Acc. ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e
		Abl. ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī
	P.	Nom. ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
		Gen. ācr-ium	ācr-ium	ācr-ium
		Dat. ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus
		Acc. ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
		Abl. ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus

81 Third Declension Adjectives of One Ending.

diligēns (<i>gen. diligentis</i>) ¹	stem: diligēt-
pār (<i>gen. paris</i>) ¹	stem: par-
audāx (<i>gen. audācis</i>) ¹	stem: audāc-
praeceps (<i>gen. praecipitis</i>) ¹	stem: praecipit-

These adjectives are all declined like *gravis*, *e*, except in the nominative singular (which is the same in all three genders) and in the accusative singular neuter (which is always like the nominative).

82	S.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
		Nom. DĪLIGĒNS	DĪLIGĒNS	DĪLIGĒNS
		Gen. diligent-is	diligent-is	diligent-is
		Dat. diligent-ī	diligent-ī	diligent-ī
		Acc. diligent-em	diligent-em	DĪLIGĒNS
		Abl. diligent-ī	diligent-ī	diligent-ī
	P.	Nom. diligent-ēs	diligent-ēs	diligent-ia
		Gen. diligent-ium	diligent-ium	diligent-ium
		Dat. diligent-ibus	diligent-ibus	diligent-ibus
		Acc. diligent-ēs	diligent-ēs	diligent-ia
		Abl. diligent-ibus	diligent-ibus	diligent-ibus

¹Adjectives of this class will always be given in the vocabularies thus: *diligēns* (*gen. diligentis*).

83 **Vetus** (*gen. veteris*), *old*, is declined like *lĕx* and *flūmen*.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	like <i>lĕx</i>	like <i>lĕx</i>	like <i>flūmen</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i> VETUS	VETUS	VETUS
	<i>Gen.</i> veter-is	veter-is	veter-is
	<i>Dat.</i> veter-ī	veter-ī	veter-ī
	<i>Acc.</i> veter-em	veter-em	vetus
	<i>Abl.</i> veter-e	veter-e	veter-e
P.	<i>Nom.</i> veter-ēs	veter-ēs	veter-a
	<i>Gen.</i> veter-um	veter-um	veter-um
	<i>Dat.</i> veter-ibus	veter-ibus	veter-ibus
	<i>Acc.</i> veter-ēs	veter-ēs	veter-a
	<i>Abl.</i> veter-ibus	veter-ibus	veter-ibus

Irregular Adjectives.


84 a. The following adjectives are declined like *ūnus*, *a*, *um* (No. 114) in the singular and like *magnī*, *ae*, *a* in the plural:

sōlus, *a*, *um*, *alone*

tōtus, *a*, *um*, *whole*

ūllus, *a*, *um*, *any (at all)*

nūllus, *a*, *um*, *no, not any*



Thus: <i>Nom.</i>	<i>sōlus</i>	<i>sōla</i>	<i>sōlum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>sōlius</i>	<i>sōlius</i>	<i>sōlius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sōlī</i>	<i>sōlī</i>	<i>sōlī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sōlum</i>	<i>etc.</i>	

- 85 b. *Alius, alia, aliud, other, another*, is regular except in the underlined forms:

alteri S.	Nom.	alius	alia	<u>aliud</u>
	Gen.	<u>alius</u> <i>alterius</i>	<u>alius</u>	<u>alius</u>
	Dat.	<u>ali</u>	<u>ali</u>	<u>ali</u>
	Acc.	alium	aliam	<u>aliud</u>
	Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō
P.	Nom.	ali-ī	ali-ae	ali-a
		etc. (like magnī, ae, a)		

- 86 Note: The genitive singular *alius* is rarely used. The genitive singular of *alter, alterius*, or the adjective *aliēnus, a, um, belonging to another*, is used instead.

- 87 c. *Alter, altera, alterum, the other, one (of two), or the second*, is regular (like *miser*) except in the genitive and dative singular:

S.	Nom.	alter	altera	alterum
	Gen.	alter- <u>ius</u>	alter- <u>ius</u>	alter- <u>ius</u>
	Dat.	alter- <u>ī</u>	alter- <u>ī</u>	alter- <u>ī</u>
	Acc.	alter-um	alter-am	alter-um
		etc.		

- 88 d. *Neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two)*, and the interrogative *uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)*, are declined like *alter, altera, alterum*.

Comparison of Adjectives.

89 The comparative of adjectives in English is formed either by using the adverb 'more' or by adding *-er* to the adjective.

90 The superlative of adjectives in English is formed either by using the adverb 'most' or by adding *-est* to the adjective:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
certain	more certain	most certain
heavy	heavier	heaviest

In Latin:

91 To form the COMPARATIVE add *-ior, -ius* to the STEM of the positive.

92 To form the SUPERLATIVE add *-issimus, -issima, -issimum* to the STEM of the positive.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<u>cert-us</u> certain	certior, certius more certain	certissimus, a, um most certain
<u>grav-is</u> heavy	gravior, gravior heavier	gravissimus, a, um heaviest
diligēns stem: diligent- careful	diligentior, diligentius more careful	diligentissimus, a, um most careful
audāx stem: audāc- daring	audācior, audācius more daring	audācissimus, a, um most daring

93 Note: The Latin superlative is weaker than the English and is frequently translated by the adverb 'very' with the positive of the adjective:

certissimus, a, um	very certain
gravissimus, a, um	very heavy

Note:

- 94 a. Adjectives in **-er** add **-rimus** to the **NOMINATIVE MASCULINE SINGULAR** to form the **SUPERLATIVE**.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
miser, misera, miserum <i>wretched</i>	miserrimus, a, um <i>most wretched</i>
acer, acris, acre <i>sharp</i>	acerrimus, a, um <i>sharpest</i>

- 95 Note: But the **COMPARATIVES** of these words follow the regular rule, No. 91. Thus:

stem: miser-	comp.: miserior, miserius
stem: acr-	comp.: acrior, acrius

- 96 b. Similis, *like*, dissimilis, *unlike*, facilis, *easy*, humilis, *low*, difficilis, *difficult*, gracilis, *graceful*, add **-limus** to the **stem** to form the **SUPERLATIVE**.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
facilis, e stem: facil- <i>easy</i>	facillimus, a, um <i>easiest</i>

not utilis

- 97 Note: But the comparatives of these words follow the regular rule, No. 91. Thus:

stem: facil-	comp.: faciliior, facilius
--------------	----------------------------

- 98 c. Adjectives ending in **-us** preceded by a vowel (except **qu** or **gu**) form their comparative and superlative with the adverbs **magis** and **maximē**.

Positive:	<i>doubtful</i>	dubius, a, um
Comparative:	<i>more doubtful</i>	magis dubius, a, um
Superlative:	<i>most doubtful</i>	maximē dubius, a, um

pt. genitive like *satus* only
not indeclinable

99 Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives.¹

1. bonus, good	mel-ior, -ius, better	optimus, best
2. malus, bad	pē-jor, pē-jus, worse	pessimus, worst
3. magnus, great	mā-jor, mā-jus, greater	maximus, greatest
4. parvus, small	min-or, -us, smaller	minimus, smallest
5. multus, much	plūs (n.), ² more	plūrimus, most
6. multī, many	plūr-ēs, -a, ² more	plūrimī, very many
7. juvenis, young	jun-ior, ius, younger	[nātū minimus, youngest]
8. senex, aged	sen-ior, ius, elder	[nātū maximus, eldest]
9. novus, new	[recent-ior, -ius, fresher]	novissimus, last
10. vetus (veter-), old	[vetust-ior, -ius, older]	veterrimus, oldest
11. propinquus, near	prop-ior, -ius, nearer	proximus, nearest, next

depends
what it
modifies

Not "i" stems except

¹In this list only the masculine of the positive and superlative degrees are given. The feminine and neuter are formed regularly.

²*Plūs* is a noun in the singular: Nom. *plūs*, Gen. *plūris*, Dat. —, Acc. *plūs*, Abl. *plūre*; *plūs vinī*, 'more wine' (lit. 'more of wine'). In the plural it is an adjective: *plūrēs*, *plūrēs*, *plūra*, *plūrium*, etc.

100 In the cases of the following comparatives and superlatives the corresponding positive adjective does not exist, or is rare:¹

1. dēterior, <i>worse</i>	dēterrīmus, <i>worst</i>
2. exterior, <i>outer</i>	extrēmus, <i>outermost</i>
3. inferior, <i>lower</i>	īmus īfīmus } <i>lowest</i>
4. interior, <i>inner</i>	īntīmus, <i>inmost</i>
5. posterior, <i>later</i>	postrēmus, <i>last</i>
6. prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
7. superior, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus summus } <i>highest</i>
8. ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultīmus, <i>farthest</i>

✱ ¹In this list only the masculine is given; the feminine and neuter are formed regularly.

Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives.

- 101 All COMPARATIVES are declined like *lĕx* and *flūmen*. The STEM is always the full MASCULINE SINGULAR NOMINATIVE, thus: stem: **GRAVIOR-**.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	like <i>lĕx</i>	like <i>lĕx</i>	like <i>flūmen</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i> gravior	gravior	gravius
	<i>Gen.</i> <u>graviōr-is</u>	graviōr-is	graviōr-is
	<i>Dat.</i> graviōr-ī	graviōr-ī	graviōr-ī
	<i>Acc.</i> graviōr-em	graviōr-em	gravius
	<i>Abl.</i> <u>graviōr-e</u>	<u>graviōr-e</u>	<u>graviōr-e</u>
P.	<i>Nom.</i> graviōr-ēs	graviōr-ēs	<u>graviōr-a</u>
	<i>Gen.</i> <u>graviōr-um</u>	<u>graviōr-um</u>	<u>graviōr-um</u>
	<i>Dat.</i> graviōr-ibus	graviōr-ibus	graviōr-ibus
	<i>Acc.</i> graviōr-ēs	graviōr-ēs	<u>graviōr-a</u>
	<i>Abl.</i> graviōr-ibus	graviōr-ibus	graviōr-ibus

Like a man

- 102 All SUPERLATIVES are declined like *magnus*, *a*, *um*. Thus:

certissim-us	certissim-a	certissim-um
certissim-ī	certissim-ae	certissim-ī
etc.		

ADVERBS

103 **Formation of Adverbs.** Although there are many other kinds of adverbs in Latin, a large number are formed from adjectives. The following GENERAL RULES may be given:

104 a. To form adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declensions, add **-ē** to the STEM:

Adjective	Stem	Adverb
lātus, a, um <i>wide</i>	lāt-	lātē <i>widely</i>
liber, libera, liberum <i>free</i>	liber-	liberē <i>freely</i>

105 **Note:** But some adverbs have **-ō** instead of **-ē**:

Adjective	Stem	Adverb
tūtus, a, um <i>safe</i>	tūt-	tūtō <i>safely</i>

106 b. To form adverbs from adjectives of the third declension, add **-iter** to the STEM:

Adjective	Stem	Adverb
gravis, e <i>serious</i>	grav-	graviter <i>seriously</i>
ācer, ācris, ācre <i>sharp</i>	ācr-	ācriter <i>sharply</i>

107 **Note:** But for adjectives in **-ns**, add **-er** to the STEM:

Adjective	Stem	Adverb
diligēns (gen. diligentis) <i>careful</i>	diligent-	diligenter <i>carefully</i>

- 108 c. To form adverbs from many adjectives (especially of quantity and number), use the neuter singular accusative:

Adjective	Adverb
multus, a, um	multum
<i>much</i>	<i>much</i>
facilis, e	facile
<i>easy</i>	<i>easily</i>

Comparison of Adverbs.

- 109 a. The COMPARATIVE of an adverb is the same as the NEUTER ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR of the comparative adjective.
- 110 b. The SUPERLATIVE of the adverb is formed by changing the -us of the superlative adjective to -ē.

	<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
Adj.	lātus, a, um	lātior, latius	lātissimus, a, um
	<i>wide</i>	<i>wider</i>	<i>widest</i>
Adv.	lātē	lātius	lātissimē
	<i>widely</i>	<i>more widely</i>	<i>most widely</i>
Adj.	facilis, e	facilior, facilius	facillimus, a, um
	<i>easy</i>	<i>easier</i>	<i>easiest</i>
Adv.	facile	facilius	facillimē
	<i>easily</i>	<i>more easily</i>	<i>most easily</i>

111 Irregular Comparison of Adverbs.

The following are irregular (either in the positive or in the comparative and superlative):

bene, ¹ <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best</i>
male, ¹ <i>badly</i>	pējus, <i>worse</i>	pessimē, <i>worst</i>
magnōpere, ² <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	maximē, <i>most</i>
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>most</i>
parum, (<i>too</i>) <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least</i>
diū, <i>long</i> (of time)	diūtius, <i>longer</i>	diūtissimē, <i>longest</i>
nūper, <i>lately</i>	.....	nūperrimē, <i>most recently</i>
.....	potius, <i>rather</i>	potissimum, <i>especially</i>
prope, <i>near</i>	propius, <i>nearer</i>	proximē, <i>next</i>
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius, <i>oftener</i>	saepissimē, <i>oftenest</i>

¹Note the short final *e* in these adverbs.

²Magnōpere = magnō opere (from opus, operis, n.).

NUMERALS

112

Cardinals

- 1 ūnus, a, um (*one*)
- 2 duo, ae, o (*two*)
- 3 trēs, tria
- 4 quattuor
- 5 quīnque
- 6 sex
- 7 septem
- 8 octō
- 9 novem
- 10 decem
- 11 ūndecim
- 12 duodecim
- 13 tredecim
- 14 quattuordecim
- 15 quīndecim
- 16 sēdecim
- 17 septendecim
- 18 duodēvigintī
- 19 ūndēvigintī
- 20 vīgintī
- 30 trīgintā
- 40 quadrāgintā
- 50 quīnquāgintā
- 60 sexāgintā
- 70 septuāgintā
- 80 octōgintā
- 90 nōnāgintā
- 100 centum
- 200 ducentī, ae, a

113

Ordinals

- prīmus, a, um (*first*)
- secundus, a, um (*second*)¹
- tertius, a, um
- quārtus, a, um
- quīntus, a, um
- sextus, a, um
- septimus, a, um
- octāvus, a, um
- nōnus, a, um
- decimus, a, um
- ūndecimus, a, um
- duodecimus, a, um
- tertius (a, um) decimus, a, um
- quārtus (a, um) decimus, a, um
- quīntus (a, um) decimus, a, um
- sextus (a, um) decimus, a, um
- septimus (a, um) decimus, a, um
- duodēvīcēsīmus, a, um
- ūndēvīcēsīmus, a, um
- vīcēsīmus, a, um
- trīcēsīmus, a, um
- quadrāgēsīmus, a, um
- quīnquāgēsīmus, a, um
- sexāgēsīmus, a, um
- septuāgēsīmus, a, um
- octōgēsīmus, a, um
- nōnāgēsīmus, a, um
- centēsīmus, a, um
- ducentēsīmus, a, um

¹See No. 826.

300	trecentī, ae, a	trecentēsimus, a, um
400	quadringentī, ae, a	quadringentēsimus, a, um
500	quīngentī, ae, a	quīngentēsimus, a, um
600	sescentī, ae, a	sescentēsimus, a, um
700	septingentī, ae, a	septingentēsimus, a, um
800	octingentī, ae, a	octingentēsimus, a, um
900	nōngentī, ae, a	nōngentēsimus, a, um
1,000	mille	millēsimus, a, um
2,000	duo mīlia	bis millēsimus, a, um
100,000	centum mīlia	centiēs millēsimus, a, um
1,000,000	decīēs ¹ centēna (ōrum) mīlia	decīēs centiēs millēsimus, a, um

Declension of Numerals.

"i" stems

- 114 a. Ūnus, a, um, *one*, is declined like *magnus*, a, um except in the genitive and dative singular.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ūn-us	ūn-a	ūn-um
<i>Gen.</i>	ūn-īus	ūn-īus	ūn-īus
<i>Dat.</i>	ūn-ī	ūn-ī	ūn-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūn-um	ūn-am	ūn-um
<i>Abl.</i>	ūn-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō

- 115 b. Duo, duae, duo, *two*.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

¹decīēs is an adverb, 'ten times.'

- 116 c. Trēs, tria, *three*, is declined like the plural of *gravis*, e.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	tr-ēs	tr-ēs	tr-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	tr-ium	tr-ium	tr-ium
	<i>etc.</i>		

- 117 d. Mille, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable ADJECTIVE:

a thousand men, mille hominēs

by a thousand soldiers, ā mille militibus.

Mīlia, *thousands*, is a plural neuter NOUN (mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, mīlia, mīlibus) and always takes the GENITIVE:

two thousand men, duo mīlia hominum (*two thousands of men*)

with three thousand soldiers, cum tribus mīlibus mīlitum (*with three thousands of soldiers*).

- 118 e. All other declinable numerals are declined like the plural of *magnus*, a, um, thus: ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred*:

ducent-ī	ducent-ae	ducent-a
ducent-ōrum	ducent-ārum	ducent-ōrum
<i>etc.</i>		

119 **Compound Numerals.**
The numerals 21-29, 31-39, *etc.*, are formed by using other numerals together:

120 a. For all the numerals compounded with 8 and 9 up to and inclusive of 88 and 89, prefix **duodē-** and **ūndē-** to the next zero number:

- 121 b. For all other compound numerals between 20 and 100 put the small number first and use **et**, or put the large number first without **et**:

- 122 c. From 101 up put the largest number first without et:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>one hundred and one,</i> | centum ūnus |
| <i>one hundred and first,</i> | centēsimus prīmus |
| <i>one hundred and fifty-two,</i> | centum quīnquāgintā duo |

PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns of the First and Second Persons.

123		<i>First Person</i>			
S.	{	Nom.	ego	I	<u> </u>
	{	Gen.	meī	of me	of myself
	{	Dat.	mihi	to me	to myself
	{	Acc.	mē	me	myself
	{	Abl.	mē ¹	(by, etc.) me	(by, etc.) myself
P.	{	Nom.	nōs	we	
	{	Gen.	nostrī ²	of us	of ourselves
	{		nostrum ³		
	{	Dat.	nōbīs	to us	to ourselves
	{	Acc.	nōs	us	ourselves
	{	Abl.	nōbīs ¹	(by, etc.) us	(by, etc.) ourselves
124		<i>Second Person</i>			
S.	{	Nom.	tū	you	<u> </u>
	{	Gen.	tuī	of you	of yourself
	{	Dat.	tibi	to you	to yourself
	{	Acc.	tē	you	yourself
	{	Abl.	tē ¹	(by, etc.) you	(by, etc.) yourself
P.	{	Nom.	vōs	you	
	{	Gen.	vestrī ²	of you	of yourselves
	{		vestrum ³		
	{	Dat.	vōbīs	to you	to yourselves
	{	Acc.	vōs	you	yourselves
	{	Abl.	vōbīs ¹	(by, etc.) you	(by, etc.) yourselves

¹Mēcum, tēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum are used for cum mē, etc.

²Nostrī and vestrī are objective genitives only (see No. 684).

³Nostrum and vestrum are used as partitive genitives (see No. 686).

125 Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns of the First and Second Persons.

	as adjective	as pronoun
meus, a, um	<i>my</i>	<i>mine</i>
noster, nostra, nostrum	<i>our</i>	<i>ours</i>
tuus, a, um	<i>your (singular)</i>	<i>yours</i>
vester, vestra, vestrum	<i>your (plural)</i>	<i>yours</i>

126 Meus, a, um and tuus, a, um are declined like magnus, a, um.

Noster, nostra, nostrum (stem: nostr-) and vester, vestra, vestrum (stem: vestr-) are declined like integer, integra, integrum.

Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

127 a. Reflexive:

Nom.	.....	.....
Gen.	suī	of himself, herself, itself, themselves
Dat.	sibi	to himself, herself, itself, themselves
Acc.	sē (sēsē)	himself, herself, itself, themselves
Abl.	sē ¹ (sēsē)	(by, etc.) himself, herself, itself, themselves

128 b. Non-reflexive:

No aus-

	Masc.		Fem.		Neut.
S.	Nom. is	he	ea	she	id it
	Gen. ējus	of him	ējus	of her	ējus of it
		his		her	its
	Dat. eī	to or	eī	to or	eī to or
		for him		for her	for it
	Acc. eum	him	eam	her	id it
	Abl. eō	(by, etc.) him	eā	(by, etc.) her	eō (by, etc.) it
P.	Nom. eī ²	they	eae	they	ea they (those things)
	Gen. eōrum	of them	eārum	of them	eōrum of them
		their		their	their
	Dat. eīs ³	to or	eīs ³	to or	eīs ³ to or
		for them		for them	for them
	Acc. eōs	them	eās	them	ea them (those things)
	Abl. eīs ³	(by, etc.) them	eīs ³	(by, etc.) them	eīs ³ (by, etc.) them

FOR "sort of man" use *quidam*.

¹*Sēcum* is used for *cum sē*.

²The nominative masculine plural is also spelled *ū*.

³The dative and ablative plural (all genders) are also spelled *ūs*.

Note:

- 129 1. The meanings given for the masculine and feminine of *is*, *ea*, *id* hold only when the pronoun refers to PERSONS. Otherwise all forms are translated as in the neuter.
- Urbem cēpit. Postea eam incendit.
He took the city. Afterwards he burned it.
- 130 2. The plural is declined by adding the plural endings of *magnus*, *a*, *um* to the STEM, *e-*.

Possessive Adjective and Pronoun of the Third Person.

- 131 a. Reflexive: suus, a, um, his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own). *Suus* is declined like *magnus*, *a*, *um*.
- 132 b. Non-reflexive: The genitive of *is*, *ea*, *id* is used.
ējus, of him, of her, of it = *his*, *her*, *its*.
eōrum, *eārum*, of them = *their*.

poss.

Agrees in number and gender
 Not in Case - on itself

Possessive Pronouns of the first and second person agree in number, gender, and case

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns.

133

THIS

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i> hic	haec	hoc
	<i>Gen.</i> hūjus	hūjus	hūjus
	<i>Dat.</i> huic	huic	huic
	<i>Acc.</i> hunc	hanc	hoc
	<i>Abl.</i> hōc	hāc	hōc

THESE

P.	<i>Nom.</i> hī	hae	haec
	<i>Gen.</i> hōrum	hārum	hōrum
	<i>Dat.</i> hīs	hīs	hīs
	<i>Acc.</i> hōs	hās	haec
	<i>Abl.</i> hīs	hīs	hīs

134

THAT
(Emphatic)

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i> ille	illa	illud
	<i>Gen.</i> illīus	illīus	illīus
	<i>Dat.</i> illī	illī	illī
	<i>Acc.</i> illum	illam	illud
	<i>Abl.</i> illō	illā	illō

THOSE

P.	<i>Nom.</i> illī	illae	illa
	<i>Gen.</i> illōrum	illārum	illōrum
	<i>Dat.</i> illīs	illīs	illīs
	<i>Acc.</i> illōs	illās	illa
	<i>Abl.</i> illīs	illīs	illīs

- 135 *Is, ea, id*¹ is also a demonstrative pronoun meaning *that* (pl. *those*). It is less emphatic than *ille, illa, illud*.
- 136 *Iste, ista, istud, that, that of yours*, is declined like *ille, illa, illud* (No. 134).

137

SAME

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>
P.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>eīdem</i> ²	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> ³	<i>eīsdem</i> ³	<i>eīsdem</i> ³
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> ³	<i>eīsdem</i> ³	<i>eīsdem</i> ³

Hic & qui are each 1 syllable.

¹This is the same word that is used for the personal pronoun of the third person. For its declension see No. 128.

²*Eīdem* is also spelled *īdem* and *īdem*.

³*Eīsdem* is also spelled *īsdem* and *īsdem*.

138 Intensive Adjective and Pronoun.

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
	<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
	<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
	<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
	<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
P.	<i>Nom.</i>	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
	<i>Gen.</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
	<i>Dat.</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
	<i>Acc.</i>	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
	<i>Abl.</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

139 The Relative Pronoun and Adjective.

WHO; WHICH; THAT; WHAT

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod
	<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus
	<i>Dat.</i>	cui (one syllable)	cui	cui
	<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod
	<i>Abl.</i>	quō ¹	quā ¹	quō ¹
P.	<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
	<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
	<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
	<i>Abl.</i>	quibus ¹	quibus ¹	quibus ¹

¹Quōcum (or quīcum), quācum, quibuscum are used instead of cum quō, cum quā, cum quibus.

Quis vir - What man
Quod flumen - what river

PRONOUNS

39

140 The Interrogative Pronoun.

WHO? WHAT?

[For Persons]

S.	Nom.	quis	quis	Neut.
	Gen.	cujus	cujus	quid
	Dat.	cui	cui	cujus
	Acc.	quem	quem	cui
	Abl.	quō ¹	quā ¹	quid
P.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
	Nom.	quī	quae	quid
	Gen.	quōrum	quārum	cujus
	Dat.	quibus	quibus	cui
	Acc.	quōs	quās	quid
	Abl.	quibus ¹	quibus ¹	cujus

141

The Interrogative Adjective. Quī, quae, quod, *which*, *what*, is declined like the relative pronoun (No. 139).

¹Quōcum (or quīcum), quācum, quibuscum are used instead of cum quō, cum quā, cum quibus.

VERBS

- 142 Verbs have voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
- 143 Voice. There are two voices: active and passive.
- 144 a. The active represents the subject as acting or being.
Lēgātum laudō.
I praise the envoy.
Valeō.
I am well.
- 145 b. The passive represents the subject as acted upon.
Laudor.
I am praised.
- 146 Mood.¹ There are three moods: indicative, subjunctive, imperative.
- 147 Tense.¹ There are six tenses: present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, future perfect.
- 148 Number. There are two numbers: singular and plural.
- 149 Person. There are three persons:
First (the one speaking—*I, we*).
Second (the one spoken to—*you*).
Third (the one spoken of—*he, she, it, they*).
- 150 Conjugation consists in adding the proper endings to the proper stem to show the different voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

¹The meanings and uses of the moods and tenses must be learned from syntax.

- 151 **The Four Conjugations.** There are four conjugations in Latin. They can be distinguished by the endings of the present infinitive active.

1	2	3	4
-āre	-ēre	-ere	-īre
laud-āre	mon-ēre	mitt-ere	aud-īre

- 152 **Principal Parts.** There are four parts of the verb called principal parts because all the others are formed on them or on their stems. These parts are:

	1	2	3	4
Pres. ind. act.	laud-ō	mon-eō	mitt-ō	aud-iō
Pres. infin. act.	laud-āre	mon-ēre	mitt-ere	aud-īre
Perf. ind. act.	laudāv-ī	monu-ī	mīs-ī	audīv-ī
Perf. part. pass.	laudāt-us ¹	monit-us ¹	miss-us ¹	audīt-us ¹

- 153 The present stem is found by dropping the ending of the present infinitive active.

laudāre	laud-	} On this stem are formed: all present, imperfect, and future tenses; ² the gerund and the gerundive.
monēre	mon-	
mittere	mitt-	
audīre	aud-	

- 154 The perfect stem is found by dropping the ending of the perfect indicative.

laudāvī	laudāv-	} On this stem are formed: all perfect, pluperfect, future perfect tenses active.
monuī	monu-	
mīsī	mīs-	
audīvī	audīv-	

¹The perfect participle passive is given in the masculine in all verbs that use it in all genders; otherwise it is given in the neuter (*e.g.*, in intransitive verbs). Some verbs have no perfect participle passive; the future participle active is then given as the fourth principal part (*e.g.*, *haereō*, *haerēre*, *haesi*, *haesūrus*, 2, *intr.*, 'cling').

²Except the future participle active and the future infinitive passive (see Nos. 156 and 158).

- 155 The perfect participle passive is used with forms of the verb *esse* to form the perfect, pluperfect, future perfect tenses passive.

laudatus	laudatus sum, etc.
monitus	monitus sum, etc.
missus	missus sum, etc.
auditus	auditus sum, etc.

Other Uses of the Perfect Participle Passive:

- 156 1. The future participle active is formed by changing the -us of the perfect participle passive to -urus.
- 157 2. The supines are formed by changing the -us of the perfect participle passive to -um or to -ū.
- 158 3. The future infinitive passive is formed on this stem by using the supine in -um with *īrī* as a separate word.

Perf. Part. Pass.	Fut. Part. Act.	Supines		Fut. Inf. Pass.
laudatus	laudāt-ūrus	laudāt-um	laudāt-ū	laudātum īrī
monitus	monit-ūrus	monit-um	monit-ū	monitum īrī
missus	miss-ūrus	miss-um	miss-ū	missum īrī
auditus	audīt-ūrus	audīt-um	audīt-ū	audītum īrī

159 How to Conjugate.

1. The principal parts must be learned from the vocabularies.¹
2. The present infinitive shows to which conjugation the verb belongs.
3. Find the required stems according to the rules given above.
4. Add the endings of the proper conjugation to the stems.

¹But many verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations form their principal parts just like *laudō*, *moneō*, *audiō*. These will be written in the vocabularies: *pācō*, 1, tr., 'pacify,' etc. The principal parts of verbs of the third conjugation, however, will always be written out.

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

Model Verbs

Laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus, 1, tr., praise

Moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, 2, tr., advise

Mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, 3, tr., send

Audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, 4, tr., hear

ACTIVE VOICE

160 Personal Signs of the Active.

		Singular		Plural
First	(I)	-ō or -m	(we)	-mus
Second	(you)	-s	(you)	-tis
Third	(he, she, it)	-t	(they)	-nt

161 Exceptions: First and second person singular perfect indicative: laudāv-ī and laudāv-istī.

Each conjugation has its own characteristic vowel.

1st ō - long a - laudare - it is long
because it is accented
2nd ē - long e - monere - same
3rd ī - short e - mittere -
4th ī - long i - audire - same

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

(Present Stem)

162

- S. { 1. laud-ō
2. laud-ās
3. laud-at

I praise, I am praising, I do praise
you praise, you are praising, you do praise
he, she, it praises; he, she, it is praising;
he, she, it does praise

- P. { 1. laud-āmus
2. laud-ātis
3. laud-ant

we praise, we are praising, we do praise
you praise, you are praising, you do praise
they praise, they are praising, they do praise

Imperfect Tense

(Present Stem)

163

- S. { 1. laud-ābam
2. laud-ābās
3. laud-ābat

I was praising not I praise
you were praising
he, she, it was praising

- P. { 1. laud-ābāmus
2. laud-ābātis
3. laud-ābant

we were praising
you were praising
they were praising

Future Tense

(Present Stem)

164

- S. { 1. laud-ābō
2. laud-ābis
3. laud-ābit

I shall praise (I shall be praising)
you will praise (you will be praising)
he, she, it will praise (he, she, it will be praising)

- P. { 1. laud-ābimus
2. laud-ābitis
3. laud-ābunt

we shall praise (we shall be praising)
you will praise (you will be praising)
they will praise (they will be praising)

ACTIVE VOICE
INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense
(Present Stem)

165 *I advise,*
mon-eō
mon-ēs
mon-et

mon-ēmus
mon-ētis
mon-ent

166 *I send,*
mitt-ō
mitt-is
mitt-it

mitt-imus
mitt-itis
mitt-unt

167 *I hear,*
aud-iō
aud-is
aud-it

aud-īmus
aud-ītis
aud-iunt

Imperfect Tense
(Present Stem)

168 *I was advising,*
mon-ēbam
mon-ēbās
mon-ēbat

mon-ēbāmus
mon-ēbātis
mon-ēbant

169 *sending,*
mitt-ēbam
mitt-ēbās
mitt-ēbat

mitt-ēbāmus
mitt-ēbātis
mitt-ēbant

170 *hearing,*
aud-iēbam
aud-iēbās
aud-iēbat

aud-iēbāmus
aud-iēbātis
aud-iēbant

Future Tense
(Present Stem)

171 *I shall advise,*
mon-ēbō
mon-ēbis
mon-ēbit

mon-ēbimus
mon-ēbitis
mon-ēbunt

172 *send,*
mitt-am
mitt-ēs
mitt-et

mitt-ēmus
mitt-ētis
mitt-ent

173 *hear,*
aud-iam
aud-iēs
aud-iet

aud-iēmus
aud-iētis
aud-ient

1a
5a

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense

(Perfect Stem)

Emphatic
I did praise

174	S.	1. laudāv-ī	I praised	(I have praised)
		2. laudāv-istī	you praised	(you have praised)
		3. laudāv-it	he, she, it praised	(he, she, it has praised)
	P.	1. laudāv-imus	we praised	(we have praised)
		2. laudāv-istis	you praised	(you have praised)
		3. laudāv-erunt	they praised	(they have praised)

Pluperfect Tense

(Perfect Stem and the Imperfect of sum)

175	S.	1. laudāv-eram	I had praised
		2. laudāv-erās	you had praised
		3. laudāv-erat	he, she, it had praised
	P.	1. laudāv-erāmus	we had praised
		2. laudāv-erātis	you had praised
		3. laudāv-erant	they had praised

Future Perfect Tense

(Perfect Stem)

176	S.	1. laudāv-erō	I shall have praised
		2. laudāv-eris	you will have praised
		3. laudāv-erit	he, she, it will have praised
	P.	1. laudāv-erimus	we shall have praised
		2. laudāv-eritis	you will have praised
		3. laudāv-erint	they will have praised

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense
(Perfect Stem)

177	<i>I (have) advised,</i> monu-ī monu-istī monu-it	178	<i>sent,</i> mīs-ī mīs-istī mīs-it	179	<i>heard.</i> audīv-ī audīv-istī audīv-it
	monu-imus monu-istis monu-erunt		mīs-imus mīs-istis mīs-erunt		audīv-imus audīv-istis audīv-erunt

Pluperfect Tense
(Perfect Stem and the Imperfect of sum)

180	<i>I had advised,</i> monu-eram monu-erās monu-erat	181	<i>sent,</i> mīs-eram mīs-erās mīs-erat	182	<i>heard.</i> audīv-eram audīv-erās audīv-erat
	monu-erāmus monu-erātis monu-erant		mīs-erāmus mīs-erātis mīs-erant		audīv-erāmus audīv-erātis audīv-erant

Future Perfect Tense
(Perfect Stem)

183	<i>I shall have advised,</i> monu-erō monu-eris monu-erit	184	<i>sent,</i> mīs-erō mīs-eris mīs-erit	185	<i>heard.</i> audīv-erō audīv-eris audīv-erit
	monu-erimus monu-eritis monu-erint		mīs-erimus mīs-eritis mīs-erint		audīv-erimus audīv-eritis audīv-erint

ACTIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present Tense

(Present Stem)

		In Purpose Clauses	In Wishes
186	S.	1. laud-em <i>(that) I may praise</i>	<i>may I praise</i>
		2. laud-ēs <i>(that) you may praise</i>	<i>may you praise</i>
		3. laud-et <i>(that) he, she, it may praise</i>	<i>may he, she, it praise</i>
	P.	1. laud-ēmus <i>(that) we may praise</i>	<i>may we praise,</i>
		2. laud-ētis <i>(that) you may praise</i>	<i>may you praise</i>
		3. laud-ent <i>(that) they may praise</i>	<i>may they praise</i>

Imperfect Tense

(Present Stem)

187	S.	1. laud-ārem	(that) I might praise
		2. laud-ārēs	(that) you might praise
		3. laud-āret	(that) he, she, it might praise
	P.	1. laud-ārēmus	(that) we might praise
		2. laud-ārētis	(that) you might praise
		3. laud-ārent	(that) they might praise

Examples of the Subjunctive

188 The meanings of the subjunctive must be learned from syntax. A few examples are given here.

189 1. The present subjunctive is used to express wishes, as:

May you praise God.

Deum laudēs.

190 2. The first person plural and the third person, singular and plural, of the present subjunctive are used to translate the English *let*, as:

Let us praise God.

Deum laudēmus.

ACTIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present Tense
(Present Stem)

194	(that) I may advise, mon-eam mon-eās mon-eat mon-eāmus mon-eātis mon-eant	195	send, mitt-am mitt-ās mitt-at mitt-āmus mitt-ātis mitt-ant	196	hear. aud-iam aud-iās aud-iat aud-iāmus aud-iātis aud-iant
-----	---	-----	--	-----	--

Imperfect Tense
(Present Stem)

197	(that) I might advise, mon-ērem mon-ērēs mon-ēret mon-ērēmus mon-ērētis mon-ērent	198	send, mitt-erem mitt-erēs mitt-eret mitt-erēmus mitt-erētis mitt-erent	199	hear. aud-īrem aud-īrēs aud-īret aud-īrēmus aud-īrētis aud-īrent
-----	---	-----	--	-----	--

- 191 3. The present and imperfect subjunctive are used in subordinate purpose clauses:

Christ came $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{that He might} \\ \text{to} \end{array} \right\}$ praise God.

Christus vēnit ut Deum laudāret.

- 192 4. The subjunctive is used in indirect questions.

He asked whether I was praising God.

Rogāvit num Deum laudārem.

- 193 **Note:** The subjunctive in subordinate clauses is often translated by the ENGLISH INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense

(Perfect Active Stem)

In Indirect Questions

200	S.	1. laudāv-erim	<i>(whether) I praised</i>
		2. laudāv-erīs	<i>(whether) you praised</i>
		3. laudāv-erit	<i>(whether) he, she, it praised</i>
	P.	1. laudāv-erīmus	<i>(whether) we praised</i>
		2. laudāv-erītis	<i>(whether) you praised</i>
		3. laudāv-erint	<i>(whether) they praised</i>

Pluperfect Tense

(Perfect Active Stem)

201	S.	1. laudāv-issem	<i>(whether) I had praised</i>
		2. laudāv-issēs	<i>(whether) you had praised</i>
		3. laudāv-isset	<i>(whether) he, she, it had praised</i>
	P.	1. laudāv-issēm̄us	<i>(whether) we had praised</i>
		2. laudāv-issētis	<i>(whether) you had praised</i>
		3. laudāv-issent	<i>(whether) they had praised</i>

ACTIVE VOICE
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense
(Perfect Active Stem)

202	(whether) I advised, monu-erim monu-erīs monu-erit	203	sent, mīs-erim mīs-erīs mīs-erit	204	heard. audīv-erim audīv-erīs audīv-erit
	monu-erīmus monu-erītis monu-erint		mīs-erīmus mīs-erītis mīs-erint		audīv-erīmus audīv-erītis audīv-erint

Pluperfect Tense
(Perfect Active Stem)

205	(whether) I had advised, monu-issem monu-issēs monu-isset	206	sent, mīs-issem mīs-issēs mīs-isset	207	heard. audīv-issem audīv-issēs audīv-isset
	monu-issēmūs monu-issētis monu-issent		mīs-issēmūs mīs-issētis mīs-issent		audīv-issēmūs audīv-issētis audīv-issent

ACTIVE VOICE

IMPERATIVE MOOD

(Present Stem)

- 208 S. laud-ā (you) praise!
P. laud-āte (you) praise!

INFINITIVE

Present Tense
(Present Stem)

- 209 laudāre to praise

Perfect Tense

(Perfect Active Stem)

- 210 laudāv-isse to have praised

Future Tense

(Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., laudātus, stem: laudāt-)

- 211 laudāt-ūrus, a, um esse to be about to praise

GERUND (VERBAL NOUN)

(Present Stem)

- 212 Gen. laud-andī of praising
Dat. laud-andō to or for praising
Acc. laud-andum praising
Abl. laud-andō by praising

SUPINE

(Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., laudātus, stem: laudāt-)

- 213 laudāt-um to praise
laudāt-ū in praising, to praise

PARTICIPLE (VERBAL ADJECTIVE)

Present Tense

(Present Stem)

- 214 laudāns (laudant-is)
- ¹
- praising

Future Tense

(Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., laudātus, stem: laudāt-)

- 215 laudāt-ūrus, a, um² { being about to praise
about to praise
on the point of praising

¹For the declension of the present participle see No. 307.²The future participle is declined like *magnus, a, um*.

ACTIVE VOICE

IMPERATIVE MOOD

(Present Stem)

216	S. mon-ē P. mon-ēte	217	mitt-e mitt-ite	218	aud-ī aud-īte
-----	-----------------------------------	-----	--	-----	-----------------------------

INFINITIVE

Present Tense

(Present Stem)

219	mon-ēre	220	mitt-ere	221	aud-īre
-----	---------	-----	----------	-----	---------

Perfect Tense

(Perfect Active Stem)

222	monu-isse	223	mīss-isse	224	audīv-isse
-----	-----------	-----	-----------	-----	------------

Future Tense

(Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., monitus, stem: monit-)

225	monit-ūrus, a, um esse	226	miss-ūrus, a, um esse	227	audīt-ūrus, a, um esse
-----	---------------------------	-----	--------------------------	-----	---------------------------

GERUND (VERBAL NOUN)

(Present Stem)

228	Gen. mon-endī Dat. mon-endō Acc. mon-endum Abl. mon-endō	229	mitt-endī mitt-endō mitt-endum mitt-endō	230	aud-iendī aud-iendō aud-iendum aud-iendō
-----	---	-----	---	-----	---

SUPINE

(Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., monitus, stem: monit-)

231	monit-um monit-ū	232	miss-um miss-ū	233	audīt-um audīt-ū
-----	---------------------	-----	-------------------	-----	---------------------

PARTICIPLE (VERBAL ADJECTIVE)

Present Tense
(*Present Stem*)

234	mon-ēns (monent-is) ¹	235	mitt-ēns (mittent-is) ¹	236	aud-iēns (audient-is) ¹
-----	-------------------------------------	-----	---------------------------------------	-----	---------------------------------------

Future Tense

(*Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., monitus, stem: monit-*)

237	monit-ūrus, a, um ²	238	miss-ūrus, a, um ²	239	audīt-ūrus, a, um ²
-----	-----------------------------------	-----	----------------------------------	-----	-----------------------------------

¹For the declension of the present participle see No. 307.

²The future participle is declined like *magnus, a, um*.

PASSIVE VOICE

To form the PASSIVE of the four regular conjugations:

- 240 a. In the finite tenses formed on the PRESENT STEM change the final personal signs:

Singular

1. -ō	to	-or
-m	to	-r
2. -s	to	-ris
3. -t	to	-tur

Plural

1. -mus	to	-mur
2. -tis	to	-minī
3. -nt	to	-ntur

- 241 Note: The second person singular of the future indicative in the first and second conjugations changes

-is	to	-eris
-----	----	-------

laudā <u>bis</u>	laudā <u>beris</u>
monē <u>bis</u>	monē <u>beris</u>

- 242 b. In the perfect tenses use the perfect participle passive with the forms of the verb *esse* shown in Nos. 255-257, 275-276. Thus:

laudātus sum	<i>I have been praised</i>
laudātus erās	<i>you had been praised</i>

PASSIVE VOICEINDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

(Present Stem)

243	S.	1. laud-or	<i>I am being praised</i>	<i>(I am praised)</i>
		2. laud-āris	<i>you are being praised</i>	<i>(you are praised)</i>
		3. laud-ātur	<i>he, she, it is being praised</i>	<i>(he, she, it is praised)</i>
	P.	1. laud-āmur	<i>we are being praised</i>	<i>(we are praised)</i>
		2. laud-āminī	<i>you are being praised</i>	<i>(you are praised)</i>
		3. laud-antur	<i>they are being praised</i>	<i>(they are praised)</i>

Imperfect Tense

(Present Stem)

244	S.	1. laud-ābar	<i>I was being praised</i>	
		2. laud-ābāris	<i>you were being praised</i>	
		3. laud-ābātur	<i>he, she, it was being praised</i>	
	P.	1. laud-ābāmur	<i>we were being praised</i>	
		2. laud-ābāminī	<i>you were being praised</i>	
		3. laud-ābantur	<i>they were being praised</i>	

Future Tense

(Present Stem)

245	S.	1. laud-ābor	<i>I shall be praised</i>	
		2. laud-āberis	<i>you will be praised</i>	
		3. laud-ābitur	<i>he, she, it will be praised</i>	
	P.	1. laud-ābimur	<i>we shall be praised</i>	
		2. laud-ābiminī	<i>you will be praised</i>	
		3. laud-ābuntur	<i>they will be praised</i>	

PASSIVE VOICE
INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

(Present Stem)

246 *I am advised,*
mon-eor
mon-ēris
mon-ētur

mon-ēmur
mon-ēminī
mon-entur

247 *sent, Long*
mitt-or
mitt-eris
mitt-itur

mitt-imur
mitt-iminī
mitt-untur

248 *heard.*
aud-ior
aud-iris
aud-itur

aud-īmur
aud-īminī
aud-iuntur

Imperfect Tense

(Present Stem)

249 *I was being advised,*
mon-ēbar
mon-ēbāris
mon-ēbātur

mon-ēbāmur
mon-ēbāminī
mon-ēbantur

250 *sent,*
mitt-ēbar
mitt-ēbāris
mitt-ēbātur

mitt-ēbāmur
mitt-ēbāminī
mitt-ēbantur

251 *heard.*
aud-iēbar
aud-iēbāris
aud-iēbātur

aud-iēbāmur
aud-iēbāminī
aud-iēbantur

Future Tense

(Present Stem)

252 *I shall be advised,*
mon-ēbor
mon-ēberis
mon-ēbitur

mon-ēbimur
mon-ēbiminī
mon-ēbuntur

253 *sent,*
mitt-ar
mitt-eris
mitt-etur

mitt-ēmur
mitt-ēminī
mitt-entur

254 *heard.*
aud-iar
aud-iēris
aud-iētur

aud-iēmur
aud-iēminī
aud-ientur

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with sum, etc.)

255	S. laudātus (a, um)	{	sum	I was praised	(I have been praised)
		{	es	you were praised	(you have been praised)
		{	est	he, she, it was praised	(he, she, it has been praised)
	P. laudātī (ae, a)	{	sumus	we were praised	(we have been praised)
		{	estis	you were praised	(you have been praised)
		{	sunt	they were praised	(they have been praised)

Pluperfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with eram, etc.)

256	S. laudātus (a, um)	{	eram	I had been praised	
		{	erās	you had been praised	
		{	erat	he, she, it had been praised	
	P. laudātī (ae, a)	{	erāmus	we had been praised	
		{	erātis	you had been praised	
		{	erant	they had been praised	

Future Perfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with erō, etc.)

257	S. laudātus (a, um)	{	erō	I shall have been praised	
		{	eris	you will have been praised	
		{	erit	he, she, it will have been praised	
	P. laudātī (ae, a)	{	erimus	we shall have been praised	
		{	eritis	you will have been praised	
		{	erunt	they will have been praised	

PASSIVE VOICE
INDICATIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with *sum*, etc.)

I was (have been) advised, sent, heard.

258	259	260	
S. monitus, a, um	missus, a, um	audītus, a, um	{ sum es est
P. monitī, ae, a	missī, ae, a	audītī, ae, a	{ sumus estis sunt

Pluperfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with *eram*, etc.)

I had been advised, sent, heard.

261	262	263	
S. monitus, a, um	missus, a, um	audītus, a, um	{ eram erās erat
P. monitī, ae, a	missī, ae, a	audītī, ae, a	{ erāmus erātis erant

Future Perfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with *erō*, etc.)

I shall have been advised, sent, heard.

264	265	266	
S. monitus, a, um	missus, a, um	audītus, a, um	{ erō eris erit
P. monitī, ae, a	missī, ae, a	audītī, ae, a	{ erimus eritis erunt

PASSIVE VOICE
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present Tense
(Present Stem)

267		In Purpose Clauses ¹	In Wishes
S.	{	1. laud-er (that) I may be praised	may I be praised
	2.	laud-ēris (that) you may be praised	may you be praised
	3.	laud-ētur (that) he, she, it may be praised	may he, she, it be praised
P.	{	1. laud-ēmur (that) we may be praised	may we be praised
	2.	laud-ēminī (that) you may be praised	may you be praised
	3.	laud-entur (that) they may be praised	may they be praised

Imperfect Tense
(Present Stem)

268

In Purpose Clauses¹

S.	{	1. laud-ārer 2. laud-ārēris 3. laud-ārētur	(that) I might be praised (that) you might be praised (that) he, she, it might be praised
P.	{	1. laud-ārēmur 2. laud-ārēminī 3. laud-ārentur	(that) we might be praised (that) you might be praised (that) they might be praised

¹Example meanings of the subjunctive are given here. For other meanings see Nos. 189-193. Further treatment of the subjunctive will be found in Part 2, Syntax.

PASSIVE VOICE
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present Tense
(Present Stem)

269	<i>(that) I may be advised,</i>	270	<i>sent,</i>	271	<i>heard.</i>
	mon-ear		mitt-ar		aud-iar
	mon-eāris		mitt-āris		aud-iāris
	mon-eātur		mitt-ātur		aud-iātur
	mon-eāmur		mitt-āmur		aud-iāmur
	mon-eāminī		mitt-āminī		aud-iāminī
	mon-eantur		mitt-antur		aud-iantur

Imperfect Tense
(Present Stem)

	<i>(that) I might be advised, sent,</i>			<i>heard.</i>	
272	mon-ērer	273	mitt-erer	274	aud-īrer
	mon-ērēris		mitt-erēris		aud-īrēris
	mon-ērētur		mitt-erētur		aud-īrētur
	mon-ērēmur		mitt-erēmur		aud-īrēmur
	mon-ērēminī		mitt-erēminī		aud-īrēminī
	mon-ērentur		mitt-erentur		aud-īrentur

PASSIVE VOICE
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with *sim*, etc.)

In Indirect Questions

275	S. laudātus, a, um	{	sim	(whether) I was praised	(I have been praised)
		{	sīs	(whether) you were praised	(you have been praised)
		{	sit	(whether) he, she, it was praised	(he, she, it has been praised)
P. laudātī, ae, a		{	sīmus	(whether) we were praised	(we have been praised)
		{	sītis	(whether) you were praised	(you have been praised)
		{	sint	(whether) they were praised	(they have been praised)

Pluperfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with *essem*, etc.)

In Indirect Questions

276	S. laudātus, a, um	{	essem	(whether) I had been praised	
		{	essēs	(whether) you had been praised	
		{	esset	(whether) he, she, it had been praised	
P. laudātī, ae, a		{	essēmus	(whether) we had been praised	
		{	essētis	(whether) you had been praised	
		{	essent	(whether) they had been praised	

PASSIVE VOICE
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with *sim*, etc.)

(whether) I was advised, sent,			heard.
277	278	279	
S. monitus, a, um	missus, a, um	audītus, a, um	{ sim sīs sit
P. monitī, ae, a	missī, ae, a	audītī, ae, a	{ sīmus sītis sint

Pluperfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with *essem*, etc.)

(whether) I had been advised, sent,			heard.
280	281	282	
S. monitus, a, um	missus, a, um	audītus, a, um	{ essem essēs esset
P. monitī, ae, a	missī, ae, a	audītī, ae, a	{ essēmus essētis essent

PASSIVE VOICE

IMPERATIVE MOOD

(Present Stem)

- 283 S. laud-āre *be (you) praised!*
P. laud-āminī *be (you) praised!*

INFINITIVE

Present Tense

(Present Stem)

- 284 laud-ārī *to be praised*

Perfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with esse)

- 285 laudātus, a, um esse *to have been praised*

Future Tense

(Supine with īrī)

- 286 laudāt-um īrī *to be about to be praised*

PARTICIPLE (VERBAL ADJECTIVE)

Perfect Tense

- 287 laudāt-us, a, um¹ *having been praised*

GERUNDIVE

(Present Stem)

- 288 laud-andus, a, um¹ *(ought) to be praised*

¹Declined like *magnus, a, um*.

PASSIVE VOICE
IMPERATIVE MOOD
(*Present Stem*)

289 mon-ēre
mon-ēminī

290 mitt-ere
mitt-iminī

291 aud-īre
aud-īminī

INFINITIVE
Present Tense
(*Present Stem*)

292 mon-ērī

293 mitt-ī

294 aud-īrī

Perfect Tense
(*Perfect participle passive with esse*)

295 monitus, a, um esse

296 missus, a, um esse

297 audītus, a, um esse

Future Tense
(*Supine with īrī*)

298 monit-um īrī

299 miss-um īrī

300 audīt-um īrī

PARTICIPLE (VERBAL ADJECTIVE)
Perfect Tense

301 monit-us, a, um¹

302 missus, a, um¹

303 audīt-us, a, um¹

GERUNDIVE
(*Present Stem*)

304 mon-endus, a, um¹

305 mitt-endus, a, um¹

306 aud-iendus, a, um¹

¹Declined like *magnus, a, um*.

Declension of Participles.

- 307 a. The PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE is declined like diligēns (diligentis), No. 82, except in the ABLATIVE SINGULAR where it has e.

Thus:	laudāns	laudāns	laudāns
	laudant-is	laudant-is	laudant-is
	etc.	etc.	etc.
Abl.	laudante	laudante	laudante

Galli fortiter pugnantēs occīsī sunt.

The Gauls fighting bravely were killed.

Deō adjuvante, vincēmus.

God helping, we shall conquer.

Note:

- 308 1. Occasionally a participle is used AS A NOUN.
 Ā sapiente doctus est.
 He was taught by a wise man.
- 309 2. A few participles may be used AS ADJECTIVES.
 The ablative then ends in ī.
 Caesar annō īnsequentī advēnit.
 Caesar arrived the following year.
- 310 b. ALL OTHER PARTICIPLES are declined like **magnus**, a, um.
- The future active: laudātūrus, a, um
 Stem: laudātūr-
- The perfect participle passive: laudātus, a, um
 Stem: laudāt-
- The gerundive: laudandus, a, um
 Stem: laudand-

-Iō Verbs of the Third Conjugation.**311**

-Iō verbs of the third conjugation can be distinguished by the endings of the first and second principal parts (-iō and -ere). Thus: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, 3, tr., take, capture*. These verbs have the endings of the FOURTH CONJUGATION in those forms where the endings of the fourth conjugation begin with TWO VOWELS: *e.g., capiēbam*. In all other forms they have the endings of the THIRD CONJUGATION. In the conjugation of the model verb (pages 68-69) all forms using the endings of the third conjugation are printed in ITALICS.

CAPĪŌ, CAPERE, CĒPĪ, CAPTUS, 3, *tr.*, take, capture.

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE
<i>Present</i>		<i>Present</i>		317 <i>S. cape</i> <i>P. capite</i>
312	<i>S.</i> { capĭō capis capit	315	capiam capĭās capiat	INFINITIVE
	<i>P.</i> { capimus capitis capiunt		capĭāmus capĭātis capiant	
<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>		GERUND
313	<i>S.</i> { capĭēbam capĭēbās capĭēbat	316	capĕrem capĕrēs capĕret	319 <i>Gen. capiendī</i> <i>Dat. capiendō</i> <i>Acc. capiendum</i> <i>Abl. capiendō</i>
	<i>P.</i> { capĭēbāmus capĭēbātis capĭēbant		capĕrēmus capĕrētis capĕrent	PARTICIPLE
<i>Future</i>				320 <i>Pres. capiēns</i> (capiēnt-is)
314	<i>S.</i> { capiam capiēs capiet	321 Note: All the tenses of the perfect system active are formed regularly on the perfect stem. Thus: cēp-ī, cēp-istī, etc.		
	<i>P.</i> { capiēmus capiētis capiēnt			

PASSIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Present</i>	327 <i>S. capere</i> <i>P. capimini</i>
322	<i>S.</i> { <i>capior</i> <i>capēris</i> <i>capitur</i>	325 <i>capiar</i> <i>capīāris</i> <i>capīātur</i>	
	<i>P.</i> { <i>capimur</i> <i>capimini</i> <i>capiuntur</i>	<i>capīāmur</i> <i>capīāmini</i> <i>capiantur</i>	INFINITIVE 328 <i>Pres. capī</i>
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	GERUNDIVE 329 <i>capiendus,</i> <i>a, um</i>
323	<i>S.</i> { <i>capiebar</i> <i>capiebāris</i> <i>capiebātur</i>	326 <i>caperer</i> <i>caperēris</i> <i>caperētur</i>	
	<i>P.</i> { <i>capiebāmur</i> <i>capiebāmini</i> <i>capiebantur</i>	<i>caperēmur</i> <i>caperēmini</i> <i>caperentur</i>	
	<i>Future</i>		
324	<i>S.</i> { <i>capiar</i> <i>capīēris</i> <i>capīētur</i>	330 Note: All the tenses of the perfect system passive are formed regularly by using the perfect participle passive with the required forms of <i>sum</i> .	
	<i>P.</i> { <i>capiemur</i> <i>capiēmini</i> <i>capientur</i>		
			Thus: <i>captus, a, um sum,</i> <i>es, etc.</i>

Impersonal Verbs.

- 331 Impersonal verbs have no definite person or thing as their subject. They are used only in the THIRD PERSON SINGULAR of the indicative and subjunctive, and in the INFINITIVE. Whenever the tense is compound, the participle is NEUTER. In English the indefinite *it* serves as subject.

Licet.

It is allowed.

Factum est.

It happened.

Pluit.

It rains.

Licēre dicō.

I say (that) it is allowed.

Note:

- 332 1. Many personal verbs are sometimes used impersonally, especially in the passive.

Pugnō (*personal*).

I fight.

Ācriter pugnātum est (*impersonal*).

There was bitter fighting.

(It was bitterly fought.)

- 333 2. Many verbs, however, are used impersonally only. Their principal parts are given thus:

Licet, licēre, licuit, 2, *intr.*; *dat. of person and infin., it is allowed.*

Mihi venīre licet.

It is allowed (to) me to come.

Deponent Verbs.

- 334 Some verbs have PASSIVE FORMS but ACTIVE MEANINGS. These are called deponent verbs. They have only three principal parts:

	<i>1st Sing. Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Present Infīn.</i>	<i>1st Sing. Perf. Indic.</i>
I	hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum, 1, tr., <i>exhort</i>
II	vereor	verērī	veritus sum, 2, tr., <i>fear</i>
III	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum, 3, tr., <i>follow</i>
III (-iō)	patior	patī	passus sum, 3, tr., <i>suffer</i>
IV	mōlior	mōlīrī	mōlītus sum, 4, tr., <i>set in motion</i>

- 335 Deponents are conjugated exactly like *laudor*, *moneor*, *mittor*, *capior*, *audior* (Nos. 243-306), except in the following:

1. the future infinitive,
2. present and future participle,
3. supine,
4. gerund and gerundive.

For clarity all the infinitives, participles, gerunds, supines, and gerundives of the deponents are given in full (pages 72-74).

INFINITIVE			
I	II	III	IV
		III (-iō)	
Present Tense			
(PASSIVE in form; ACTIVE in meaning)			
336	hortārī, to exhort	sequī, to follow	patī, to suffer
	verērī, to fear		mōlirī, to set in motion
Perfect Tense			
(PASSIVE in form; ACTIVE in meaning)			
337	hortātus, a, um esse, to have exhorted	secūtus, a, um esse, to have followed	passus, a, um esse, to have suffered
	verītus, a, um esse, to have feared		mōlītus, a, um esse, to have set in motion
Future Tense			
(ACTIVE IN FORM AND MEANING!)			
338	hortātūrus, a, um esse, to be about to exhort	secūtūrus, a, um esse, to be about to follow	passūrus, a, um esse, to be about to suffer
			mōlītūrus, a, um esse, to be about to set in motion

PARTICIPLE

IV

III (-iō)

III

II

I

339

Present Tense

(ACTIVE IN FORM AND MEANING!)

hortāns
(hortant-is)
exhortingverēns
(verent-is)
fearingsequēns
(sequent-is)
followingpatiēns
(patient-is)
sufferingmōliēns
(mōlient-is)
setting in motion

340

Future Tense

(ACTIVE IN FORM AND MEANING!)

hortātūrus, a, um
being about to
exhort
about to exhort
on the point of
exhortingveritūrus, a, um
being about to
fear
about to fear
on the point of
fearingsecūtūrus, a, um
being about to
follow
about to follow
on the point of
followingpassūrus, a, um
being about to
suffer
about to suffer
on the point of
sufferingmōlītūrus, a, um
being about to
set in motion
about to set in
motion
on the point of
setting in motion

341

Perfect Tense

(PASSIVE in form; ACTIVE in meaning)

hortātus, a, um
having exhortedveritus, a, um
having fearedsecūtus, a, um
having followedpassus, a, um
having sufferedmōlītus, a, um
having set in
motion

GERUND
(ACTIVE IN FORM AND MEANING!)

342

I	II	III	IV (-iō)
hortandī, of exhorting, etc.	verendī, of fearing, etc.	sequendī, of following, etc.	patiendī, of suffering, etc.

343

SUPINE
(ACTIVE IN FORM AND MEANING!)

hortātum hortātū	veritum veritū	secūtum secūtū	passum passū	mōlitum mōlitū
---------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-----------------	-------------------

344

GERUNDIVE
(PASSIVE IN FORM AND MEANING!)

hortandus, a, um (ought) to be exhorted	verendus, a, um (ought) to be feared	sequendus, a, um (ought) to be followed	patiendus, a, um (ought) to be suffered	mōliendus, a, um (ought) to be set in motion
--	---	--	--	---

Semi-Deponent Verbs.

345

A few verbs have ACTIVE FORMS in the present, imperfect, and future, and PASSIVE FORMS in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, but ACTIVE MEANINGS in all forms.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 2, <i>intr.</i>	<i>dare</i> (ausus sum: <i>I dared</i>)
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, 2, <i>intr.</i>	<i>rejoice</i>
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, 2, <i>intr.</i>	<i>am accustomed</i>
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, 3, <i>intr.</i>	<i>trust</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM, ESSE, FUĪ,¹ FUTŪRUS, *intr.*, *am*, *be*

INDICATIVE

346 Present

S.	sum	I am
	es	you are
	est	he, she, it is

P.	sumus	we are
	estis	you are
	sunt	they are

347 Imperfect

S.	eram	I was
	erās	you were
	erat	he, she, it was

P.	erāmus	we were
	erātis	you were
	erant	they were

348 Future

S.	erō	I shall be
	eris	you will be
	erit	he, she, it will be

P.	erimus	we shall be
	eritis	you will be
	erunt	they will be

349 Perfect

fu-ī ¹	I have been, I was
fu-istī	you have been, you were
fu-it	he, she, it has been; he, she, it was

fu-imus	we have been, we were
fu-istis	you have been, you were
fu-erunt	they have been, they were

350 Pluperfect

fu-eram	I had been
fu-erās	you had been
fu-erat	he, she, it had been

fu-erāmus	we had been
fu-erātis	you had been
fu-erant	they had been

351 Future Perfect

fu-erō	I shall have been
fu-eris	you will have been
fu-erit	he, she, it will

fu-erimus	we shall have been
fu-eritis	you will have been
fu-erint	they will have been

¹Note that the tenses of the perfect system are formed regularly on the perfect stem *fu-*.

SUBJUNCTIVE

352	Present		355	Perfect
S.	sim	I may be	fu-erim ¹	I may have been
	sīs	you may be	fu-erīs	you may have been
	sit	he, she, it may be	fu-erit	he, she, it may have been
P.	sīmus	we may be	fu-erīmus	we may have been
	sītis	you may be	fu-erītis	you may have been
	sint	they may be	fu-erint	they may have been
353	Imperfect		356	Pluperfect
S.	essem	I might be	fu-issem	I might have been
	essēs	you might be	fu-issēs	you might have been
	esset	he, she, it might be	fu-isset	he, she, it might have been
P.	essēmus	we might be	fu-issēmus	we might have been
	essētis	you might be	fu-issētis	you might have been
	essent	they might be	fu-issent	they might have been

IMPERATIVE

354	S.	{ es be estō be; you shall be	357	P.	{ este be estōte be; you shall be
-----	----	--	-----	----	---

INFINITIVE

358	Pres.	esse	to be	359	Perf.	fu-isse ¹	to have been
360	Fut.	{ futūrus, a, um esse fore ²					<u>to be about to be</u>

PARTICIPLE

361	Fut.	futūrus, a, um	(being) about to be
-----	------	----------------	---------------------

futur active participle

¹Note that the tenses of the perfect system are formed regularly on the perfect stem *fu-*.

²*Fore* remains unchanged in all genders and numbers.

EŌ, ĪRE, ĪVĪ(ĪĪ), ITUM, *intr.*, *go*.

FĪŌ, FIERĪ, FACTUS SUM, *intr.*, *am made, become, am done*.

FERŌ, FERRE, TULĪ, LĀTUS, *tr.*, *bear, carry, endure*.

362 Note: All the tenses not shown here are formed regularly.

INDICATIVE

Present Tense

						Active	Passive
		<i>go</i>		<i>become</i>		<i>bear</i>	
363		366	fīō	369	ferō	372	feror
S.	{		fīs		fers		ferris
	{		fit		fert		fertur
P.	{	īmus	fīmus		ferimus		ferimur
	{	ītis	fītis		fertis		feriminī
	{	eunt	fiunt		ferunt		feruntur

Imperfect Tense

364		367	fīēbam	370	ferēbam	373	ferēbar
S.	{		fīēbās		ferēbās		ferēbāris
	{		fīēbat		ferēbat		ferēbātur
P.	{	ībāmus	fīēbāmus		ferēbāmus		ferēbāmur
	{	ībātis	fīēbātis		ferēbātis		ferēbāminī
	{	ībant	fīēbant		ferēbant		ferēbantur

Future Tense

365		368	fīam	371	feram	374	ferar
S.	{		fīēs		ferēs		ferēris
	{		fīet		feret		ferētur
P.	{	ībimus	fīēmus		ferēmus		ferēmur
	{	ībitis	fīētis		ferētis		ferēminī
	{	ībunt	fīent		ferent		ferentur

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Tense

375	S.	eam	381	fiam	386	feram	392	ferar	Active
		eās		fīās		ferās		ferāris	Passive
		eat		fīat		ferat		ferātur	
P.		eāmus		fīāmus		ferāmus		ferāmur	
		eātis		fīātis		ferātis		ferāmini	
		eant		fīant		ferant		ferantur	

Imperfect Tense

376	S.	īrem	382	fierem	387	ferrem	393	ferrer
		īrēs		fierēs		ferrēs		ferrēris
		īret		fieret		ferret		ferrētur
P.		īrēmus		fierēmus		ferrēmus		ferrēmur
		īrētis		fierētis		ferrētis		ferrēmini
		īrent		fierent		ferrent		ferrentur

IMPERATIVE

377	S.	ī	383	fī	388	fer	394	ferre
	P.	īte		fīte		ferre		ferimini

INFINITIVE

378	īre	384	fieri	389	ferre	395	fieri
-----	-----	-----	-------	-----	-------	-----	-------

PARTICIPLE

379	iēns [eunt-is]	390	ferēns
-----	----------------	-----	--------

GERUND

380	eundī, etc.	391	ferendī, etc.
-----	-------------	-----	---------------

GERUNDIVE

385	faciendus, a, um	396	ferendus, a, um
-----	------------------	-----	-----------------

397 Eō has the impersonal passive forms: *itur, ibātur, itum est, eundum est*. The transitive compounds of *eō* form a full passive by changing the final personal signs; thus: *in-eor, in-īris, etc.; infin., in-īrī; gerundive, ineundus, a, um*.

POSSUM,¹ POSSE, POTUI, *intr.*, *can, am able.*
 VOLŌ, VELLE, VOLUI, *tr.*, *wish, am willing.*
 NŌLŌ, NŌLLE, NŌLUI, *tr.*, *do not wish, am unwilling.*
 MĀLŌ, MĀLLE, MĀLUI, *tr.*, *prefer.*

398 Note: All the tenses not shown here are formed regularly.

INDICATIVE

Present Tense

399		402	volō	405	nōlō	408	mālō
S.	{	possum	vīs		nōn vīs		māvīs
		potes	vult		nōn vult		māvult
		potest					
P.	{	possumus	volumus		nolumus		mālumus
		potestis	vultis		nōn vultis		māvultis
		possunt	volunt		nōlunt		mālunt

Imperfect Tense

400		403	volēbam	406	nōlēbam	409	mālēbam
S.	{	poteram	volēbās		nōlēbās		mālēbās
		poterās	volēbat		nōlēbat		mālēbat
		poterat					
P.	{	poterāmus	volēbāmus		nōlēbāmus		mālēbāmus
		poterātis	volēbātis		nōlēbātis		mālēbātis
		poterant	volēbant		nōlēbant		mālēbant

Future Tense

401		404	volam	407	nōlam	410	mālam
S.	{	poterō	volēs		nōlēs		mālēs
		poteris	volet		nōlet		mālet
		poterit					
P.	{	poterimus	volēmus		nōlēmus		mālēmus
		poteritis	volētis		nōlētis		mālētis
		poterunt	volent		nōlent		mālent

¹The present, imperfect, and future indicative and the present subjunctive consist in a prefix and *sum, es, etc.*
 Prefix 'pos' when the next letter will be 's'; e.g., 'pos sum' written *possum*.
 Prefix *pot* when the next letter will be 'e'; e.g., 'pot es' written *potes*.

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Tense

411	{	possim	414	velim	419	nōlim	425	mālim
S.	{	possis		velis		nōlis		mālis
	{	possit		velit		nōlit		mālit
	{	possīmus		velīmus		nōlīmus		mālīmus
P.	{	possītis		velītis		nōlītis		mālītis
	{	possint		velint		nōlint		mālint

Imperfect Tense

412	{	possem	415	vellem	420	nōllem	426	māllem
S.	{	possēs		vellēs		nōllēs		māllēs
	{	posset		vellet		nōllet		māllet
	{	possēmus		vellēmus		nōllēmus		māllēmus
P.	{	possētis		vellētis		nōllētis		māllētis
	{	possent		vellent		nōllent		māllent

IMPERATIVE

S.	.....	.....	421	nōlī	.....
P.	.....	.....		nōlīte	.....

INFINITIVE

413	posse	416	velle	422	nōlle	427	mālle
-----	-------	-----	-------	-----	-------	-----	-------

PARTICIPLE

.....	417	volēns	423	nōlēns	428	mālēns
.....		(volent-is)		(nōlent-is)		(mālent-is)

GERUND

.....	418	volendī, etc.	424	nōlendī, etc.	429	mālendī, etc.
-------	-----	---------------	-----	---------------	-----	---------------

COEPĪ,¹ COEPISSE, COEPTUS, *tr.*, *have begun.*

MEMINĪ, MEMINISSE, *tr.*, *remember.*

ŌDĪ, ŌDISSE, ŌSUS, *tr.*, *hate.*

INDICATIVE

Perfect Tense

430 *I began*
coepī, *etc.*

436 *I remember*
meminī, *etc.*

443 *I hate*
ōdī, *etc.*

Pluperfect Tense

431 *I had begun*
coeperam, *etc.*

437 *I remembered*
memineram, *etc.*

444 *I hated*
ōderam, *etc.*

Future Perfect Tense

432 *I shall have begun*
coeperō, *etc.*

438 *I shall remember*
meminerō, *etc.*

445 *I shall hate*
ōderō, *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect Tense

433 coeperim, *etc.*

439 meminerim, *etc.* 446 ōderim, *etc.*

Pluperfect Tense

434 coepissem, *etc.*

440 meminisse, *etc.* 447 ōdissem, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE

441 *remember*
mementō, -tōte

INFINITIVE

435 *to have begun*
coepisse

442 *to remember*
meminisse

448 *to hate*
ōdisse

¹When *coepī* governs a passive infinitive it is changed to the passive form, *coeptus sum*. It is, however, translated as active. Thus: *Eum laudāre coepī*, "I began to praise him," but: *Urbs aedificārī coepta est*, "The city began to be built."

PARTICIPLE

Future Tense

449 *about to begin*
coeptūrus, a, um

451 *about to hate*
ōsūrus, a, um

Perfect Tense

450 *begun*
coeptus, a, um

INQUAM, *I say.**Present Tense*

452 inquam inquis inquit inquit inquit

Imperfect Tense

453 inquitēbat inquitēbat

Future Tense

454 inquitēs inquiet inquiet

Perfect Tense

455 inquistī inquit inquit

AJŌ, *I say.**Present Tense*

456 ajō ais ait ajunt

Imperfect Tense

457 ajēbam ajēbās ajēbat ajēbāmus ajēbātis ajēbant

Present Subjunctive

458 ajās ajat ajant

QUAESŌ, *I beg, I entreat.**Present Indicative Active*

459 quaesō quaesumus

PART 2

SYNTAX

ORDER OF WORDS

460 The verb is last.

Caesar Gallum interfēcit.
Caesar killed a Gaul.

Caesar, etsi in his locis hiemēs mātūrae sunt, in Britanniam proficisci contendit.

Although the winters in these regions are early, Caesar hastened to set out for Britain.

Note:

461 1. Forms of the verb *sum*, *am*, may stand anywhere in the sentence.

Deus est bonus.
Deus bonus est.
God is good.

462 2. The imperative more frequently stands first.

Pugnāte, milites, fortiter.
Fight bravely, soldiers.

463 3. The vocative generally does not stand first.

Pugnāte, milites, fortiter.
Soldiers! fight bravely.

- 464 Adjectives of *quantity*, *size*, and *number*,
demonstrative and *interrogative* adjectives
stand BEFORE the nouns they modify.

Multi hominēs
Many men

Hic vir
This man

✓✓ Quem in locum?
Into which place?

- 465 Adjectives of *quality*
and *possessive* pronouns
stand AFTER the nouns they modify.

Vir bonus
A good man

Pater meus
My father

- 466 *Adverbs* and *ablatives*
stand BEFORE the verbs and adjectives they modify.

Equitēs celeriter vērērunt.
The cavalry came swiftly.

Laude dignus
Worthy of praise

- 467 Temporal clauses,
the ablative absolute,
conditional and concessive clauses
PRECED E the main clause.
Other clauses, especially result clauses,
FOLLOW the main clause.

Cum eum dē hāc rē certiōrem fēcissent, abiērunt.
When they had informed him of this, they went away.

Sī vim faciētis prohibēbō.
If you use force, I shall prevent you.

Tanta erat tempestās ut nāvēs frangerentur.
There was so terrible a storm that the ships were destroyed.

- 468 Note: Purpose clauses (more) often precede.

Ut eōs pācāret lēgātum mīsit.
He sent a lieutenant to pacify them.

- 469 Words are put in unusual positions for emphasis, balance, or other rhetorical effects.

Aliud iter habēmus nullum.
We have no other way.

RULES OF AGREEMENT

- 470 A finite verb agrees with its subject in *person* and *number*.

Deus est.
God is.

Note: With a COMPOUND subject:

- 471 1. Either the verb is plural; the first person is preferred to the second, the second to the third.

Ego et tū vēnimus.

You and I have come.

Tū et ille capti estis.

You and he have been captured.

- 472 2. OR the verb may agree with the nearest, especially when the verb stands before or between the subjects, or when the subjects are things.

Caesar vēnit et ego.

Caesar and I came.

Tempus necessitāsque postulat.

The time and the need demand it.

- 473 A predicate noun agrees with the subject, and an appositive agrees with its noun in case (if possible, also in gender and number).

Christus Rēx est.

Christ is King.

- 474 A predicate adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

Vita brevis est.

Life is short.

Ea rēs nuntiāta est.

This fact was reported.

Note: With more than one subject:

- 475 1. If persons of different sexes, the predicate adjective is masculine.

Pater et filia mortuī sunt.

Father and daughter are dead.

- 476 2. If things of different genders, the predicate adjective agrees with the nearest or is neuter.

Impedimenta et equitatus secutus est.

The baggage and cavalry followed.

Castella et vicī dēlēta sunt.

The forts and the villages were destroyed.

- 477 An attributive adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

Miles fortis pugnat.

The brave soldier fights.

- 478 Note: With more than one word the attributive adjective agrees with the nearest or is repeated with each.

Multi patrēs et filiae

Patrēs et filiae multae

Multi patrēs et multae filiae

Many fathers and daughters

- 479 A pronoun agrees with the word to which it refers, in gender and number; its case depends on its use in its own clause.

Rōma est magna urbs. Vidistīne eam?

Rome is a large city. Have you seen it?

Contrā Germānōs exercitum dūxit. Hī sunt fortēs.

He led his army against the Germans. These are brave.

Marīa quam laudāmus Māter Deī est.

Mary, whom we praise, is the Mother of God.

MAIN CLAUSES

USE OF THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

- 480 The action or state expressed by a verb has stage and time.
Stage: The action or state may be beginning, continuing, or completed.
Time: The action or state may be present, past, or future.
- 481 *Note:* In theory, therefore, nine different forms of the verb are possible in the indicative: three forms—representing the three different stages—for each of the three times. Actually, however, languages are more economical, using one form for two or more stages or times. Thus the present indicative in Latin represents the stages of beginning and continuing in present time. The precise meaning of such forms is indicated by the context.
- 482 The following chart shows the different stages and times expressed by the tenses of the Latin indicative:

		TIME		
		<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Past</i>
STAGE	<i>Beginning</i>	<i>present tense</i> laudō <i>I (begin to)</i> <i>praise</i>	<i>future tense</i> laudābō <i>I shall (begin to)</i> <i>praise</i>	<i>historical perfect</i> laudāvī <i>I praised (began to praise)</i>
	<i>Continuing</i>	<i>present tense</i> laudō <i>I am praising</i>	<i>future tense</i> laudābō <i>I shall be praising</i>	<i>imperfect</i> laudābam <i>I was praising</i>
	<i>Completed</i>	<i>present perfect</i> laudāvī <i>I have praised</i>	<i>future perfect</i> laudāverō <i>I shall have praised</i>	<i>pluperfect</i> laudāveram <i>I had praised</i>

The present tense expresses an action or state as:

- 483 1. Begun, continued, or repeated in present time.
Hūjus cīvitātis est longē amplissima auctōritās.
The influence of this nation is by far the greatest.
- 484 2. Universally true.
Omnēs hominēs libertātī student.
Everyone is eager for liberty.
- 485 3. Happening in past time; the past is put before our eyes as happening now (*historical present*).
Circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt.
They surrounded the fellow and killed him.
(*They surround him and kill him.*)

The imperfect tense expresses an action or state as:

- 486 1. Begun, continued, or repeated (habitual) in past time.
Nostra classis ūnā celeritāte praestābat.
Our fleet was superior in point of speed alone.
- 487 2. Happening at the same time as other past actions or states. It is, therefore, the *descriptive* tense of past time. It sets the stage, gives the background for the action of the perfect.
Etsī mōns Cevenna iter impediēbat, tamen ad finēs Arvernōrum pervēnit.
Although the mountain Cevenna stood in the way of his march, he arrived at the boundaries of the Arverni.
- 488 3. Attempted in past time.
Eī persuādēbat ut ā Caesare dēficeret.
He was trying to persuade him to revolt against Caesar.
(*i. e., he was going through the action of persuading but had not yet succeeded.*)

The future tense expresses an action or state as:

- 489 1. Begun, continued, or repeated in future time.
Quā laetitiā perfruēris!
What pleasure will you enjoy!
- 490 2. As generally true.
Ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs.
As you sow, so shall you reap.
- 491 Note: The future is sometimes equivalent to a command.
Hunc ā vitā civium arcēbis!
Ward this man off from the lives of our citizens!
(*You will ward this man off from the lives of our citizens!*)

The perfect tense expresses an action or state as:

- 492 1. Done in past time (*historical perfect*). It is, therefore, the *narrative* tense of past time.
Subitum autem bellum in Galliā coortum est.
A sudden war, however, broke out in Gaul.
- 493 2. Completed in present time (*present perfect*).
Vēnī.
I have come.
(The act of *coming* is *now* completed.)

The pluperfect tense expresses an action or state as:

- 494 1. Completed in past time.
Venetōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae erant.
The ships of the Veneti had been (were) built in this way.
(The act of *building* was *then* completed.)

- 495 2. Completed before another past act or state.

Nāvēs eōdem unde erant profectae revertērunt.

The ships returned to the same place from which they had set out.

(The *setting out* was before the past act of *returning*.)

The future perfect tense expresses an action or state as:

- 496 1. Completed in future time.

Hoc cūrāverō.

This shall be my care.

- 497 2. Completed before another future act or state.

Ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs.

As you sow (will have sown), so shall you reap.

(The *sowing* will be completed before the future act of *reaping*.)

KINDS OF MAIN CLAUSES

STATEMENTS

- 498 Statements of fact are expressed in the indicative;
negative: *nōn*.

Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs.

Gaul taken as a whole is divided into three parts.

Note:

- 499 1. The present infinitive is sometimes used in place of the imperfect indicative for vividness (*historical infinitive*).

Nostrī fortiter repugnāre.

Our men were resisting vigorously.

- 500 2. To state a modest judgment or a simple possibility the subjunctive is used, the present and perfect for present time, the imperfect for past time (*potential subjunctive*).

Velim (nōlim, mālim).

I should like (not like, prefer).

Dixerit aliquis.

Someone may say.

Vidērēs (cernerēs, putārēs).

You might have seen (observed, thought).

- 501 3. In the potential subjunctive the second person singular and the third person plural are usually **indefinite**.

Crēderēs.

One

You

A person

} might have thought.

DIRECT QUESTIONS

- 502 **DEFINITION:** A direct question is one addressed directly to someone, and which uses the exact words of the original speaker.

Quis es? *Who are you?*

Centuriō, "Quis," inquit, "vēnit?"

The centurion said, "Who came?"

- 503 Direct questions are introduced by:

1. interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs.
2. *nōnne* if the answer 'yes' is expected.
3. *num* { if the answer 'no' is expected.
to express surprise.
4. *-ne* to ask for information.
(Add *-ne* to the emphatic word and put first in the sentence.)

Pronoun: Quis es? *Who are you?*

Adjective: Quam urbem oppugnāvērunt?
Which city did they attack?

Adverb: Ubi sunt? *Where are they?*

Nōnne: Nōnne Deus est bonus?

God is good, isn't He? We same tense

Isn't God good? (Answer: 'yes.')

Num: Num Caesar victus est?

Caesar wasn't conquered, was he?

Surely Caesar wasn't conquered?

(Answer: 'no.')

-Ne: Vidistīne Rōmam?

Have you seen Rome?

(Answer: "I have seen Rome" or "I have not seen Rome"; 'yes' or 'no.')

*I not the goodly
powerful to be*

Note:**1. DOUBLE QUESTIONS:**

504 **Definition:** A double question is one that gives two alternatives:

(1) (2)
Will you fight or will you flee?

505 **Direct double questions are introduced by:**

1. **utrum an**
2. **-ne an**
3. **. an**
 (. . . 'or not' is **annōn**)

Will you fight or will you flee?

Utrum pugnābis an fugiēs?

Pugnābisne an fugiēs?

Pugnābis an fugiēs?

Will you fight or not?

Utrum pugnābis annōn?

Pugnābisne annōn?

Pugnābis annōn?

506 2. Sometimes no introductory word is used, especially when the question is asked in surprise.

Vōcis expectās contumēliam?

Are you waiting for a spoken attack?

3. **An** sometimes introduces single questions:

507 a. When a preceding member is easily understood.

Mōsne mājōrum impedit? An lēgēs?

Do our traditions prevent it? Or do the laws?

508 b. Implying a negative answer.

An dubitāmus?

Or do we doubt it? (Absurd!)

DELIBERATIVE QUESTIONS

509 **DEFINITION:** A deliberative question is one asked in doubt or indignation about a course of action (what is or was to be done).

510 A deliberative question is put in the subjunctive;
present for present time;
imperfect for past time;
negative: *nōn*.

PRESENT TIME: *Quid faciam?*
What should I do?
What am I to do?
Hunc ego nōn diligam?
Should I not love this man?

PAST TIME: *Quid facerent?*
What were they to do?
Pecūniam nōn trāderem?
Was I not to hand over the money?

WISHES

511 1. POSSIBLE wishes are expressed by the
PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE with *UTINAM*.
(With the third person *utinam* is often omitted.)
Negative: *nē*.

(*Utinam*) *nostrī vincant!*
May our men conquer.

(The battle is still going on; neither side has conquered as yet; it is still POSSIBLE for this wish to come true. Note that the English translation requires the auxiliary verb 'may.' *Utinam* is not translated.)

Nē veniant.
May they not come.

- 512 2. Wishes CONTRARY TO A PRESENT FACT
are expressed by the
IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE with *UTINAM*.
Negative: *nē*.

Utinam Caesar viveret.

Would that Caesar were living.

(The FACT is that Caesar is NOW dead; the wish is CONTRARY TO A PRESENT FACT. Note that the English is 'would that' and uses the English auxiliary verb 'were' or 'was'.)

Utinam nē adesset.

Would that he was (were) not present.

- 513 3. Wishes CONTRARY TO A PAST FACT
are expressed by the
PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE with *UTINAM*.
Negative: *nē*.

Utinam Pilātus Chrīstum dēfendisset.

Would that Pilate had defended Christ.

(As a matter of FACT Pilate did NOT defend Christ. The wish is CONTRARY TO A PAST FACT. Note that the English uses the PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.)

Utinam nē Chrīstum occīdisset.

Would that they had not killed Christ.

JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

- 514 Commands in the third person (he, she, it, they) are expressed by the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.
Negative: *nē*.

Impetum faciant.

Let them make an attack.

(Note that English uses the verb 'let' and puts the person in the accusative, while the Latin makes the person the subject of the subjunctive verb.)

Nē pugnet.

Let him not fight.

COMMANDS IN THE SECOND PERSON

In the second person:

- 515 1. Positive commands are expressed by the imperative.

Pugnāte fortiter.

Fight bravely.

- 516 2. For negative commands use either:

a. *nōlī* or *nōlīte* ('be unwilling to') with the infinitive; or

b. *nē* with the PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Nōlī pugnāre.

Do not fight.

(Lit.: *Be unwilling to fight.*)

Nē crēdideris.

Don't believe it.

- 517 Note: The second person present subjunctive is used in commands (negative *nē*) when the subject is indefinite and general or in very familiar speech.

Quidquid agis, prūdenter agās.

Whatever you do, do it wisely.

HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

- 518 An exhortation in the first person plural is expressed by the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.
Negative: *nē*.

Pugnēmus.

Let us fight.

Nē cēdāmus.

Let us not yield.

(Note that English uses the verb 'let' and puts the person in the accusative; the Latin makes the person the subject of the main verb.)

CONCESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

- 519 The subjunctive, sometimes preceded by *ut*, is used to show that something is 'granted' or 'conceded.'
Present tense for present time;
perfect tense for past time;
negative: *nē*.

PRESENT TIME: *Sit vērum.*

Granted that it is true.

I grant that it is true.

(Lit.: *Let it be true.*)

Ut ita sit.

Granted that it is so.

PAST TIME:

Nē fuerit fortis.

Granted that he was not brave.

I grant that he was not brave.

Suppose he was not brave.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

- 520 Tenses in subordinate clauses are generally determined by one of the following principles (Nos. 521-545). The particular rules for the various subordinate clauses (purpose clauses, temporal clauses, *etc.*) will indicate in each case which principle is to be followed (*e. g.*, see No. 550).

1. TENSE BY SENSE

- 521 The tenses of the indicative have the same meanings as in simple sentences.

Legiōnēs quās nūper cōscripserat aderant.

The legions which he had recently enrolled were present.

- 522 The tenses of the subjunctive have the same meanings as the corresponding tenses of the indicative.

- 523 Note: However, the Latin, in general, is more careful than the English in marking relations of time.

Cum Rōmam vēnerō, tē vidēbō.

When I come to Rome, I shall see you.

(The 'coming' is before the 'seeing'; therefore, the future perfect is used.)

2. TENSE BY SEQUENCE

The tense in many subordinate **SUBJUNCTIVE** clauses is determined by the rules for the **SEQUENCE OF TENSES**.

- 524 **Primary and Secondary Tenses.** The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are divided into two groups:

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	These are PRIMARY tenses	{ Present Perfect
Future		
Future Perfect		
Imperfect	These are SECONDARY tenses	{ Imperfect Pluperfect
Perfect		
Pluperfect		

*for indirect
Questions*

- 525 **Primary Sequence.**

When the verb in the main clause is a **PRIMARY TENSE**, the verb in the subordinate clause must be a **PRIMARY tense**.

Rogō quis veniat.	<i>I ask who is coming.</i>
Rogābō quis veniat.	<i>I shall ask who is coming.</i>
Rogāverō quis veniat.	<i>I shall have asked who is coming.</i>

- 526 **Secondary Sequence.**

When the verb in the main clause is a **SECONDARY TENSE**, the verb in the subordinate clause must be a **SECONDARY tense**.

Rogāvī quis essēs.	<i>I asked who you were.</i>
Rogābam quis essēs.	<i>I was asking who you were.</i>
Rogāveram quis essēs.	<i>I had asked who you were.</i>

In Primary Sequence:

- 527 1. When the action of the subordinate verb happens **BEFORE** the action of the main verb, the **PERFECT** subjunctive must be used.

Rogō quis vēnerit. *I ask who came.*
 Rogābō quis vēnerit. *I shall ask who came.*
 Rogāverō quis vēnerit. *I shall have asked who came.*

(In all these sentences the action of 'coming' happens before the action of 'asking'.)

- 528 2. When the action of the subordinate verb happens **AT THE SAME TIME AS** the action of the main verb, the **PRESENT** subjunctive must be used.

Rogō quid videās. *I ask what you see.*
 Rogābō quid videās. *I shall ask what you are seeing.*
 Rogāverō quid videās. *I shall have asked what you are seeing.*

(In all these sentences the action of 'seeing' happens at the same time as the action of 'asking'.)

- 529 3. When the action of the subordinate verb **WILL HAPPEN AFTER** the action of the main verb the **PRESENT** subjunctive must be used.

Veniō ut videam. *I shall come to see.*

(The 'seeing' will happen after the 'coming'.)

- 530 **Note:** But in indirect questions and **quīn**-clauses, sometimes in result clauses and other clauses (especially for clarity or emphasis), the future participle active (-ūrus, a, um) is used as a predicate adjective with the present subjunctive of **sum** (sim, etc.).

Rogō quis ventūrus sit. *I ask who* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{will come.} \\ \text{is about to come.} \\ \text{is going to come.} \end{array} \right.$

In Secondary Sequence:

- 531 1. When the action of the subordinate verb happens **BEFORE** the action of the main verb, the **PLUPERFECT** subjunctive must be used.

Rogāvī quis advēnisset. *I asked who had come.*

(The 'coming' happened **before** the 'asking'.)

- 532 2. When the action of the subordinate verb happens **AT THE SAME TIME AS** the action of the main verb, the **IMPERFECT** subjunctive must be used in the subordinate clause.

Rogāvī quis pugnāret. *I asked who was fighting.*

(The 'fighting' happens **at the same time as** the 'asking'.)

- 533 3. When the action of the subordinate verb happens **AFTER** the action of the main verb, the **IMPERFECT** subjunctive must be used.

Vēnit ut urbem oppugnāret.

He came to attack the city.

(The 'attacking' happens **after** the 'coming'.)

- 534 **Note:** In indirect questions and *quīn*-clauses, sometimes in result clauses and other clauses (especially for clarity or emphasis), the future participle active (**-ūrus, a, um**) is used as a predicate adjective with the imperfect of **sum** (**essem, etc.**)

Relation!

Rogāvī quis ventūrus esset.

I asked { *who was going to come.*
who would come.
who was about to come.

535 SUMMARY DIAGRAM

The vertical line represents the TIME of the ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. At the top of this line the primary or secondary tenses of the indicative are shown. The horizontal line represents the time of the action of the subordinate clause. The required tenses of the subjunctive are indicated for the three times possible: (1) before the main action, (2) at the same time as the main action, (3) after (future to) the main action. Understand and memorize this outline. It will enable you to explain any tense by sequence.

536 PRIMARY SEQUENCE:

<div> <div>Present Future or Future Perfect Indicative</div> <div> <div>Before</div> <div>Same time as</div> <div>After</div> </div> </div>			Main clause
Perfect Subjunctive	Present Subjunctive	Present Subjunctive or [-urus + sim, etc.]	

537 SECONDARY SEQUENCE:

	Imperfect Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative	Main clause
	Same time as	
Before		After
Pluperfect Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive or [-ūrus + essem, etc.]

Note:

- 538 1. A subjunctive dependent on a SUBORDINATE infinitive, supine, gerund, gerundive, participle, or subjunctive takes its sequence not from one of these but from the MAIN VERB.

Cōstitui ad tē venīre ut tē vidērem.

I determined to come to you to see you.

(The subjunctive *vidērem* depends on the PRESENT infinitive *venīre* but is in secondary sequence because of the main verb, *cōstitui*.)

- 539 2. However, a subjunctive dependent on a SUBORDINATE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OR A PERFECT INFINITIVE is usually in SECONDARY SEQUENCE, regardless of the main verb.

Videor multa verba fēcisse ut tibi persuādērem.

I seem to have spoken at great length to persuade you.

(*Persuādērem* depends on the perfect infinitive *fēcisse* and is therefore SECONDARY despite the PRIMARY main verb *videor*.)

- 540 3. The present perfect (*e. g.*, *vēnī*, *I HAVE come*) generally takes secondary, sometimes primary, sequence.
Vēnī ut tēcum loquar.
I have come to speak with you.

- 541 4. The historical present may take either sequence.
 Mandat ut quam primum $\begin{cases} \text{revertātur.} \\ \text{reverterētur.} \end{cases}$
He instructed him to return at the earliest possible moment.
 (Mandat is the present indicative but is used in context of a past action for vividness. See No. 485.)

3. TENSES IN STATEMENTS OF GENERAL TRUTHS OR REPEATED ACTION

- 542 Complex sentences which express a GENERAL truth or REPEATED action regularly have the INDICATIVE in both main and subordinate clauses. This rule holds when the subordinate clause is introduced by a temporal conjunction (*cum*, *when*, *quandocumque*, *whenever*, *ubi*, *when*, *etc.*), a conditional conjunction (*sī*, *if*, *nisi*, *unless*), a relative adverb (*ubi*, *where*, *etc.*), a relative pronoun (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*, *who*, *what*, *that*, *quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, *whoever*, *whatever*, *etc.*).

The TENSES are determined by the following rules (Nos. 543-545):

543 1. IN PRESENT TIME:

MAIN clause: PRESENT tense.

SUBORDINATE clause:

1. To express action before the main verb: PERFECT tense;
2. To express action at the same time as the main verb: PRESENT tense.

Quandocumque domum rediī, dormiō.*Whenever I come home, I sleep.*(I come home BEFORE I sleep; hence, PERFECT TENSE, rediī.)Quandocumque hunc librum legō, multum discō.*Whenever I read this book, I learn much.*

544 2. IN PAST TIME:

MAIN clause: IMPERFECT tense.

SUBORDINATE clause:

1. To express action before the main verb: PLUPERFECT tense;
2. To express action at the same time as the main verb: IMPERFECT tense.

Quandocumque domum redieram, dormiēbam.*Whenever I returned home, I slept.*(I returned home BEFORE I slept; hence PLUPERFECT TENSE, redieram.)Si hunc librum legēbam, multum discēbam.*If (ever) I read this book, I learned much.*

545 3. IN FUTURE TIME:

MAIN clause: FUTURE tense.

SUBORDINATE clause:

1. To express action before the main verb: FUTURE PERFECT tense;
2. To express action at the same time as the main verb: FUTURE tense.

Cum domum redierō, dormiam.

Whenever I come home, I shall sleep.

(I come home BEFORE I sleep; hence, FUTURE PERFECT TENSE, redierō.)

Quicumque hunc librum leget multum discet.

Whoever reads this book, will learn much.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

PURPOSE CLAUSES

546

Purpose clauses are introduced by:

1. *ut* (negative: *nē*),
2. *quī, quae, quod*,
3. *quō* (negative: *nē*) before a comparative;

Mood: subjunctive;

Tense: after a *primary* tense, use the *present*;

after a *secondary* tense, use the *imperfect*.

Pugnō ut vincam.

I fight	{	<i>to conquer.</i>
		<i>in order that I may conquer.</i>
		<i>that I may conquer.</i>
		<i>in order to conquer.</i>
		<i>for the purpose of conquering.</i>
		<i>for the sake of conquering.</i>

Pugnāvī ut vincerem.

I fought	{	<i>in order that I might conquer.</i>
		<i>in order to conquer.</i>
		<i>that I might conquer.</i>
		<i>to conquer.</i>
		<i>for the purpose of conquering.</i>
		<i>for the sake of conquering.</i>

Pugnō nē vincar.

I fight lest I be conquered.

I fight that I may not be conquered.

Note:

- 547 1. *Quō* (negative: *nē*) is used when the purpose clause contains a **comparative** adverb or adjective.
Urbem mūnīvit quō facilius eam dēfenderet.
He fortified the city that he might more easily defend it.
Militēs in castra vocāvit nē diūtius pugnārent.
He called the soldiers into the camp lest they fight longer.
- 548 2. *And in order that . . . not* is *nēve* (*neu*).
- 549 3. *That no one . . . is* *nē quis* (*lest anyone*).
That never . . . is *nē umquam* (*lest ever*).
That nothing . . . is *nē quid* (*lest anything*).
That nowhere . . . is *nēcubi* (*lest anywhere*).

RESULT CLAUSES

- 550 Result clauses are introduced by:
1. *ut* (negative: *ut nōn*),
 2. *quī, quae, quod*;
- subjunctive;
 tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537, but see Nos. 554, 555).

Sic vītam ēgit ut omnēs eum laudārent.
He so lived that everyone praised him.

Sic vītam ēgit ut multī eum nōn laudārent.
He so lived that many did not praise him.

Nōn is sum quī fugiam.
I am not the one who would run away.
I am not the kind that runs away.
I am not the man to run away.

Note:

- 551 1. The main clause usually contains an adverb of degree or manner or a similar adjective:
- | | |
|---------------|----------------------------|
| tālis, e | such, of such a kind |
| tantus, a, um | so great |
| sīc; ita | so, in such a manner |
| tam; adeō | so, to such a degree, etc. |
- 552 2. When both the main clause and the result clause are NEGATIVE, quīn may be used for ut nōn.
- Nihil tam difficile est quīn quaerendō invēstīgārī possit.
Nothing is so difficult that it can not be discovered by searching.
- 553 3. Quam ut is used to denote result after COMPARATIVES.
- Fortior erat quam ut fugeret.
He was too brave to flee.
 (Lit.: *He was braver than that he should flee.* Note that the English regularly uses *too* and the infinitive in such sentences.)
- 554 4. To emphasize the actual occurrence of a past result or to indicate that the result continues up to the present, the PERFECT is used in SECONDARY sequence.
- Hostēs tot erant ut dēvictī sīmus.
The enemy were so numerous that we were (actually) defeated.
- 555 5. To express the present result of a past action, the PRESENT subjunctive is used in SECONDARY sequence.
- Adulēscēns tam strēnuē labōrāvī ut dīves nunc sim.
I worked so hard as a youth that I am now rich.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

556	<i>Ut, ubi</i>	'when'	} when expressing a single ¹ past act take the PERFECT INDICATIVE.
	<i>postquam</i>	'after'	
	<i>posteaquam</i>		
	<i>simul ac</i>	'as soon as'	
	<i>simul atque</i>		
	<i>ubi primum</i>		
	<i>ut primum</i>		
	<i>cum primum</i>		

Ubi Caesarem vidērunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.
When they saw Caesar, they sent envoys to him.

Ut hoc vidit, equitātum praemīsīt.
When he saw this, he sent the cavalry ahead.

Caesar, postquam id vidit, equitātum praemīsīt.
After he had seen this, Caesar sent forward the cavalry.

Simul atque dē Caesaris adventū certiōrēs facti sunt,
 fūgērunt.
*As soon as they were informed of the arrival of Caesar,
 they fled.*

Note:

- 557 1. Even where the English has the PLUPERFECT, these conjunctions generally take the PERFECT.

When Caesar had seen this, he sent the cavalry ahead.
 Caesar, ubi hoc vidit, equitātum praemīsīt.

¹When expressing repeated action, these clauses follow the rules given in No. 544.

- 558 2. If the interval of time (after which) is expressed, however, *postquam* regularly takes the pluperfect.

Tertiō diē *postquam* vēnerat eum vīdī.

(or: Tertiō post diē quam, etc.)

I saw him on the third day after he came.

- 559 **CUM**, 'when,' when referring to PRESENT or FUTURE time takes the INDICATIVE;
TENSE BY SENSE (Nos. 521-523).

Cum adest, nihil timēmus.

When he is present, we fear nothing.

Cum nōn erō, quid sentiam?

When I shall not exist, what shall I feel?

Cum in Galliam pervēnerō, pācem vōbiscum faciam.

When I come (shall have come) to Gaul, I shall make peace with you.

CUM, 'when,' when referring to PAST time:

- 560 1. If it sets the point of time (usually *tum*, *eō tempore* or a similar expression is found in the main clause):
INDICATIVE;
TENSE BY SENSE (Nos. 521-523).

Tum, cum haec gerēbantur, Caesar in Galliā erat.

At the time when these things were happening, Caesar was in Gaul.

- 561 2. If it describes the circumstances:
SUBJUNCTIVE;
TENSE BY SEQUENCE (Nos. 524-537).

Cum equitēs in silvīs pugnārent, Caesar militēs (trāns)
flūmen trādūxit.

*When the cavalry were fighting in the forest, Caesar
led the troops across the river.*

Caesar, cum hostēs vīdisset, legiōnēs prō castrīs in-
strūxit.

*When Caesar had seen the enemy, he drew up the
legions in front of the camp.*

Note:

- 562 1. In some sentences the main action is put in the **cum**-
clause. The imperfect or pluperfect indicative is then
used in the main clause, and the perfect or historical
present indicative in the **cum**-clause (*cum inversum*).

Hostēs jam oppugnābant, cum subitō vīsus est Caesar.

*The enemy were already attacking, when suddenly Caesar
appeared.*

(The main action is the appearance of Caesar.)

Vix dixerat, cum miles cecidit (cadiť) in terram.

The soldier had just spoken, when he fell to the ground.

- 563 2. When expressing REPEATED action, **cum**-clauses fol-
low the rules given in Nos. 542-545.

Dum (dōnec), quoad, 'until' } take:
antequam, anteāquam, priusquam, 'before' }

- 564 1. The indicative when the subordinate action merely follows the main action (the subordinate clause simply states an *actual fact*).

Ē vitā excessit antequam sōl ortus est.

He died before the sun rose.

(It happened that the sun rose after his death. Merely the FACT is stated.)

Note:

- 565 1. The subjunctive *may* be used even in this case with *antequam, anteāquam, and priusquam*, but generally the indicative is used.

- 566 2. Generally only the present, perfect, and future perfect indicative are used; instead of the pluperfect, the perfect is used; instead of the future, the present.

2. The subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537):

- 567 a. when the agent of the main action *anticipates (intends, acts to prevent)* the subordinate action.

Horātius impetum hostium sustinuit, quoad cēterī pontem interrumperent.

Horatius held off the enemy until the others should break down the bridge.

(Horatius deliberately held off the enemy so that the others could break down the bridge.)

- 568 b. when the subordinate action is merely *possible*.

Priusquam satis certa cōsilia essent, alia clādēs nuntiātur.

Before very definite plans could be formed, another disaster was reported.

(The subordinate clause states a *possibility*.)

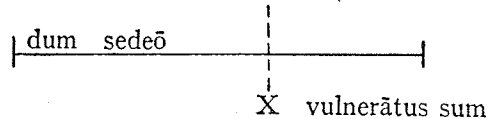
Dum, 'while,' 'as long as':

- 569 1. If the time of the *dum*-clause is **LONGER** than the time of the main clause, the **PRESENT** indicative is *always* used in the *dum*-clause.

Dum in hortō sedeō, vulnerātus sum.

While I was sitting in the garden, I was wounded.

In this diagram the solid (horizontal) line represents the duration of the time in the *dum*-clause. The dotted (vertical) line represents the time at which the wounding occurred.

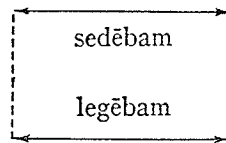


- 570 2. If the time of the two clauses is of the **SAME LENGTH**, the indicative and the **SAME TENSE** as that in the main clause is used in the *dum*-clause.

Dum in hortō sedēbam, legēbam.

While (i.e., as long as) I was sitting in the garden, I read (was reading).

In this diagram the solid horizontal lines represent the length of time in the two clauses.



- 571 Note: *Quoad* and *quamdiū*, *as long as*, follow the second rule (No. 570) for *dum*.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

Quod, quia, quoniam, 'because,' take:

- 572 1. The INDICATIVE when the reason is given as the real reason (i. e., as an objective fact).

Quod fortis nōn fuit, fūgit.

Because he was not brave, he fled.

(The *quod*-clause is stated as objectively true and as being the real reason why he fled.)

- 573 2. The SUBJUNCTIVE (TENSE BY SEQUENCE, Nos. 524-537) when the reason is given as the reason alleged (i. e., the reason of the agent¹ of the action in the main clause).

Caesar centuriōnem laudāvit quod fortiter pugnāvisset.
Caesar praised the centurion because he had fought bravely (i. e., for having fought bravely).

(The *quod*-clause is given as CAESAR'S reason.)

Tē laudō quod fortis sīs.

I praise you for being brave.

(The *quod*-clause is given as MY reason.)

Ā Caesare laudātus est quod fortis esset.

He was praised by Caesar for being brave.

(Caesar is the AGENT of the main action. The *quod*-clause is given as CAESAR'S reason.)

¹The agent of a main ACTIVE verb is generally the subject: *Laudat*, 'He praises.' 'He' is the AGENT. The AGENT is generally expressed by *ab* (*ā*) with the ablative when the main verb is PASSIVE. *Ab eō laudātus est*, 'He was praised by him.' *Eō* expresses the AGENT of the action.

Note:

- 574 1. The REJECTED REASON is expressed by *nōn quod* or *nōn quō*, *not because*, with the subjunctive (tense by sequence, Nos. 524-537).
Eam amō nōn quod pulchra sit sed quod bona est.
I love her NOT BECAUSE SHE IS BEAUTIFUL but because she is good.
(*Nōn quod pulchra sit* is the *rejected reason*.)
- 575 **Note:** If the rejected reason is a FACT, the indicative may be used.
Eam amō nōn quod pulchra est sed quod bona est.
I love her NOT BECAUSE SHE IS BEAUTIFUL but because she is good.
(It is a *fact* that she is beautiful, but that is *not my reason* for loving her.)
- 576 2. After main verbs meaning *praise*, *blame*, and the like, the subjunctive construction is generally used.
Laudat Africānum quod fuerit abstinēns.
He praises Africanus for having been self-controlled.
(Lit.: *because he was self-controlled*.)
- 577 3. *Quandō*, *sīquidem*, *quandōquidem*, *seeing that*, *inasmuch as*, take the indicative.
Id omittō, quandō vōbīs ita placet.
I pass that over, seeing that you so wish.
- 578 *Cum*, 'since,' takes the subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).
Quae cum ita sint, discēde!
Since this is the case, depart!

- 579 With verbs of emotion¹ the reason is expressed by:
1. *quod*: subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).
 2. *quod*: indicative; tense by sense (Nos. 521-523).
 3. accusative with the infinitive; tense by relation (Nos. 885-887).

Gaudeō quod vēnerīs.
I am glad that you (should) have come.

Gaudeō quod vēnistī.
I am glad that you have come.

Gaudeō tē vēnisse.
I am glad that you have come.

- 580 **Note:** The ablative of cause or *propter*, *because of*, etc., may of course also be used.

Hāc victōriā gaudeō.
I rejoice at (on account of) this victory.

¹Verbs expressing joy, sorrow, surprise, anger, etc.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

There are three types of conditional sentences.

581 1. NOTHING IMPLIED:

When the condition is merely stated without any implication as to the TRUTH or REALITY of the conditional clause (i. e., *sī*-clause).

SĪ-CLAUSE: INDICATIVE

TENSE BY SENSE (Nos. 521-523).

MAIN CLAUSE: Any construction that an independent clause may have (indicative; imperative; potential subjunctive; etc.).

Sī hoc vērum est, vōbīscum pācem faciam.

If this is true, I shall make peace with you.

(It is not indicated whether it is true or not.)

Sī Rōmam adieris, Tiberim vidēbis.

If you go to Rome, you will see the Tiber.

(It is not indicated whether you will go to Rome or not.)

582 2. SHOULD-WOULD:

The condition is stated as a mere *supposition* (English *should*).

BOTH CLAUSES: SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT or (RARELY)
perfect without difference of
meaning.

Sī veniat, eum interficiam.

Sī vēnerit, eum interfēcērim.

If he should come, I would kill him.

583 3. CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

The condition is stated as IMPOSSIBLE or UNTRUE.

BOTH CLAUSES: SUBJUNCTIVE

For present time, IMPERFECT.

For past time, PLUPERFECT.

Sī adesset, eum interficerem.

If he were here, I would kill him.

Were he here, I would kill him.

(It is implied that he is *NOT* here NOW; present contrary-to-fact.)

Sī adfuisset, eum interfēcissem.

If he had been present, I would have killed him.

Had he been present, I would have killed him.

(It is implied that he WAS NOT PRESENT; past contrary-to-fact.)

Note:

- 584 1. **NISI**, *if . . . not, unless*, negatives the entire conditional clause. It is particularly used when the MAIN clause is itself NEGATIVE.

Nisi id fēceris, tē interficiam.

Unless you do this, I shall kill you.

Civitas cōservārī nōn potest nisi cīvēs fortēs sunt.

*A state cannot be preserved { if the citizens are not brave.
unless the citizens are brave.*

- 585 2. **Sī . . . nōn**, *if . . . not*, negatives a single word in the conditional sentence. (However, **nisi** and **sī . . . nōn** are sometimes used without difference of meaning.)

Sī id nōn fēceris, tē interficiam.

If you do not do it, I shall kill you.

(*Fēceris* is emphatically negated.)

- 586 3. *Sī . . . nōn* is regularly used when the MAIN clause contains *at*, *tamen*, *certē*, or some other word expressing OPPOSITION.

Virtūs, sī amicitiam nōn gignit, certē cōservat.

Virtue, if it does not give rise to friendship, certainly preserves it.

- 587 4. *But if* is *sīn* or *sīn autem*:

Hunc mihi timōrem ēripe, sī vērus est, nē opprimar, sīn falsus. ut timēre dēsinam.

Remove this fear from me; if it is well founded, that I may not be overcome, but if it is groundless, that I may cease to fear.

- 588 5. *But if not* is *sī minus*, *sīn minus*, *sīn aliter*, or *sī . . . nōn*.

Ēdūc etiam omnēs tuōs, sīn minus, quam plūrimōs.

Lead out also all of your followers, but if not (all), as many as possible.

- 589 6. *Whether . . . or* and *if . . . or if* is *sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu)*:

Sīve fēcit, sīve nōn fēcit, pūniētur.

*Whether
If* } *he did it or not, he will be punished.*

- 590 7. Instead of the subjunctive in the main clause of a contrary-to-fact condition, the indicative is regularly used with the GERUNDIVE and with the FUTURE PARTICIPLE because of the idea of incompletion contained in these forms.

Sī advēnisset, quid fuistī factūrus?

If he had come, what were you going to do?

- 591 8. With *possum*, *dēbeō*, *oportet*, when the possibility or obligation itself is not contrary to fact, the indicative (usually imperfect or pluperfect) is used in contrary-to-fact conditions. Otherwise these verbs follow the general rule.

Sī voluisset, poterat mē adjuvāre.

If he had wished, he was able to help me.

(The possibility is real.)

Nisi aegrōtārem, tē adjuvāre possem.

If I were not ill, I would be able to help you.

(The possibility is contrary to fact.)

- 592 9. The IMPERFECT subjunctive is sometimes used in the *sī*-clause of PAST contrary-to-fact conditions to express CONTINUING PAST ACTION (or state) or action contemporary with some other past action.

Laelius, Furius, Catō, sī nihil litterīs adjuvārentur, numquam sē ad eārum studium contulissent.

Laelius, Furius, and Cato would never have devoted themselves to the study of letters, unless they had been (continuously) helped by them.

- 593 10. The construction of conditional sentences may be mixed if the sense requires it.

Sī mēns nōn laeva fuisset, Trōja nunc stāret.

If our mind had not been perverse, Troy would now be standing.

(Present and past contrary-to-fact.)

CLAUSES EXPRESSING A PROVISO OR A CONDITIONAL WISH

- 594 *Modo, dum, dummodo, and sī modo,*
'if only,' 'provided only,' 'as long as,' take the
SUBJUNCTIVE if a wish or intention is implied;
tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537);
negative: *nē*.

Ōderint, dum metuant.

Let them hate, provided only they fear.

*Magnō mē metū liberābis, modo inter mē atque tē mūrus
intersit.*

*You will free me from a great fear, if only there be a wall
between you and me.*

Manēbō dummodo tū nē fugiās.

I shall remain provided you do not flee.

ADVERSATIVE AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

- 595 1. *Quamquam*,¹ 'although,' generally states a FACT:
indicative; tense by sense (Nos. 521-523).
Quamquam dīves est, beātus nōn est.
Although he is rich, he is not happy.
- 596 2. *Cum*, 'although';
ut (negative: *nē*), 'granted that,' 'supposing that';
quamvis, 'although,' 'however' (expressing indefinite
degree):
subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).
Quamvis dīves sīs, nōn es beātus.
However rich you are, you are not happy.

¹*Quamquam* is sometimes used at the beginning of a sentence to introduce a MAIN clause. It then means 'and yet.'

Cum negāre posset, repente cōfessus est.
Although he could have denied it, he suddenly confessed.

Ut bonus sit, sapiēns nōn est.
Granted that he is good, he is not wise.

- 597 3. *Licet*, 'although,' 'granted that':
 subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537),
 but it is used only in PRIMARY sequence (hence
 only with the PRESENT or PERFECT).

Licet veniat, eum nōn vidēbō.

Although he $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{may} \\ \text{should} \end{array} \right\}$ *come, I shall not see him.*

Licet haec dixerim, nōn faciam.
Although I said this, I shall not do it.

- 598 4. *Etsi*, *etiāmsi*, *tametsi*, 'even if,' 'although,' follow the
 rules for conditional sentences (Nos. 581-583).

Etsi hiemēs mātūrae sunt, in Galliam proficīscī contendit.

Although the winters are early, he hastened to set out for Gaul.

Etiāmsi dives essem, beātus nōn essem.
Even if I were rich, I would not be happy.

CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

- 599 The indicative (tense by sense, Nos. 521-523) is regularly used in comparative clauses.

Sic est ut dixi.
It is (thus) as I have said.

- 605 5. In comparing indefinite NUMBER:
as many . . . as
tot . . . quot
Tot sunt quot putāvī.
There are as many as I thought.
- 606 6. In comparing indefinite NUMBER OF TIMES:
as often . . . as
totiēs . . . quotiēs (adverbs)
Totiēs id fēcit quotiēs voluit.
He did it as often as he wished.
- 607 7. In comparing COMPARATIVE adjectives and adverbs:
quō . . . eō
tantō . . . quantō
Quō celerius (vēneris), eō melius (erit).
The quicker (you come), the better (it will be).
- 608 8. For *the same as* use īdem, eadem, idem . . . quī, quae, quod. When the verb in the second clause is not expressed, ac (atque) may be used instead of the relative.
Idem sentiō quod tū dixistī.
I think the same as you said.
 Idem sentiō { ac / quod } tū.
I think the same as you (think).
- 609 Note: **Ac** is used only before consonants; **atque** is used before both vowels and consonants.
- 610 9. With adverbs and adjectives (other than īdem; see No. 608) of likeness and difference (perinde, aliter, alius, etc.) use ac (atque) for *as* and *than*.
 Accidit perinde ac praevidēram.
It happened just as I foresaw.
Aliter accidit ac putāveram.
It happened otherwise than I expected.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

611 Conditional clauses of comparison are introduced by:

<i>quasi</i>	}	'as if'
<i>ac sī</i>		
<i>velut</i>		
<i>velut sī</i>		
<i>ut sī</i>		
<i>tamquam</i>	}	'as though'
<i>tamquam sī</i>		
<i>quam sī</i>		'than if'

subjunctive;

tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Sē gerit quasi rēx sit.

*He conducts himself { as if
as though } he were king.*

Magis eum dilēxi quam sī frāter meus esset.

I loved him more than if he were my own brother.

612 **Note:** Sometimes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used, even though the main verb is in a primary tense, to indicate that the statement is contrary to fact.

Mihi loqueris quasi fūr essem.

You speak to me as if I were a thief.

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

- 613 A subordinate clause dependent upon a subjunctive or an infinitive is attracted into the subjunctive when it does not express a fact but forms one complex idea with the governing subjunctive or infinitive.

Bonī rēgis est eōrum quibus praesit utilitatī servīre.

It is the part of a good king to serve the interests of those whom he rules.

(Praesit would otherwise be praeest.)

Nēmō avārus adhūc inventus est cui, quod habēret, esset satis.

No avaricious person has yet been found who was satisfied with what he had.

(Habēret would otherwise be habēbat.)

- 614 **Note:** When a subordinate clause forms one idea with a contrary-to-fact condition, it is attracted both into the subjunctive and into the TENSE of the governing verb.

Quid me prohibēret Epicūrēum esse, sī probārem quae ille diceret?

What would prevent me from being an Epicurean, if I approved what he says?

(Diceret would be dicit if it were not within a contrary-to-fact condition.)

ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

RELATIVE CLAUSES

- 615 Relative adjective clauses are introduced by a relative pronoun or adjective referring to a noun or a noun-equivalent (the antecedent) in the main clause; indicative; tense by sense (Nos. 521-523).¹

Dux quem vīdī Caesar erat.

The leader whom I saw was Caesar.

Note:

- 616 1. The relative pronoun follows the general rule of agreement in No. 479. When the relative pronoun refers to a double antecedent it follows the rules in Nos. 471 and 472.
- 617 2. The antecedent, especially when it would be *is*, *ea*, *id* or an indefinite pronoun, is frequently omitted.
- Quī hoc dīcit errat.
(For "Is quī hoc dīcit errat.")
He who says this is in error.
- 618 3. The relative is never omitted.
- Vir quem vīdī Caesar erat.
The man I saw was Caesar.
- 619 4. A relative referring to a whole clause is neuter (often with *id* in apposition to the clause).
- Sīn tū, (*id*) quod jam dūdum hortor, exieris . . .
But if you go forth, a thing which I have long been urging . . .

¹However, when the sentence expresses repeated action the rules given in Nos. 542-545 are to be followed.

- 620 5. An APPOSITIVE of the antecedent and a SUPERLATIVE modifying the antecedent are regularly put in the relative clause.

Jūra, quī mōns altus est, iter impedit.

The mountain Jura, which is high, blocks the way.

Centuriōnem quem fortissimum in castrīs habēbat mīsit.

He sent the bravest centurion he had in the camp.

- 621 6. The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent.

Hoc cōfirmāmus illō auguriō quō dīximus.

We confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.

(By the ordinary rule quō would be quod as the object of dīximus.)

- 622 7. The relative quī, quae, quod is frequently used in Latin to connect a SENTENCE or a MAIN clause with the preceding sentence or clause. It is then equivalent to et is, is enim, or a similar expression and should be so translated.

Quae cum ita sint, abī!

Since these things are so, depart!

(Quae is part of the cum-clause, but connects the *sentence* with what precedes.)

. . . Quibus omnibus rēbus commōtī hostēs cōpiās trādūxērunt.

. . . *Alarmed by all these facts, the enemy led their troops across.*

(Quibus is part of the *main* clause and connects it with the preceding narration.)

- 623 Relative clauses may also be introduced by relative ADVERBS, *quō*, 'whither,' *ubi*, 'where,' *quā*, 'where,' 'by what way,' *unde*, 'whence,' etc., referring to an adverb or adverbial-equivalent expressed or implied in the main clause; indicative; tense by sense (Nos. 521-523).¹

Nāvēs unde profectae sunt (erant) revertērunt.

The ships returned (to the place) whence they had set out.

Locus ubi castra posuit tūtus erat.

The place where he pitched camp was safe.

Ex eīs regiōnibus quō hostēs advēnerant discessit.

He withdrew from those regions where the enemy had arrived.

- 624 Relative clauses, whether introduced by relative pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs, may have the force of other kinds of subordinate clauses:

- 625 PURPOSE clauses (No. 546) introduced by a relative: subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Equitēs mīsit quī oppidum caperent.

He sent cavalry to take the town.

(He sent cavalry who should take the town.)

Locum ubi castra pōneret ēlēgit.

He selected a place to pitch camp.

(He selected a place where he might pitch camp.)

¹However, when the sentence expresses repeated action the rules given in Nos. 542-545 are to be followed.

- 626 RESULT clauses (No. 550) introduced by a relative:
subjunctive;
tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537, 554-555).

Nōn is est quī hoc dīcat.

He is not such a one that he would say this.

(He is not such as would say this.)

- 627 CAUSAL clauses (Nos. 572-573, 578) introduced by a relative:
subjunctive;
tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Tibi quī mē adjūveris, grātiās agō.

I thank you who (because you) helped me.

- 628 ADVERSATIVE clauses (Nos. 595-598) introduced by a relative:
subjunctive;
tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Eum quem antea dēfenderim, tamen amplius nōn dēfendam.

Him whom I defended before, I shall nevertheless no longer defend.

Although I defended him before, I shall no longer defend him.

- 629 **CONDITIONAL** clauses introduced by a relative follow the rules for conditional sentences (Nos. 581-583).

Quī Deum esse neget, eum hominem esse vix putem.
I would scarcely consider him a human being who should deny that God exists.

(Equivalent to the *should-would* type: *I would scarcely consider him a human being if he should deny that God exists.*)

- 630 **LIMITING** relative clauses introduced by *quī*, *quī modo*, *quī quidem*:
 subjunctive;
 tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Omnium oratorum quōs quidem audiverim, acūtissimum iudicō Sertorium.

Of all the orators, whom at least I have heard, I judge Sertorius to be the most skilled.

Note:

- 631 1. The relative *quod* is used in such clauses to mean *as far as*.

Epicūrus sē ūnus, quod sciam, sapientem profitērī ausus est.
Epicurus alone, as far as I know, dared to profess himself a wise man.

- 632 2. *Quātenus*, *quoad*, and *quantum*, *as far as*, always take the indicative.

Epicūrus sē ūnus, quoad sciō, sapientem profitērī ausus est.
Epicurus alone, as far as I know, dared to profess himself a wise man.

CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSES

- 633 A relative characteristic clause is used to describe the general CHARACTER of the antecedent; subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537):
- 634 1. Regularly after general, indefinite, negative, and interrogative antecedents.
- Nēmō est quī hoc nesciat.
There is no one who does not know this.
- Quis est quī hoc crēdat?
Who is there that believes this?
- 635 2. Regularly after *idōneus*, 'suitable,' *aptus*, 'fit,' *dignus*, 'worthy,' *indignus*, 'unworthy,' *ūnus*, 'one,' and *sōlus*, 'only.'
- Virtūs* tua digna est quāe laudētur.
Your courage is worthy to be praised.
- Indignī estis quibus fidem habeāmus.
You are not worthy of our confidence.
- 636 **Note:** It is frequently impossible to distinguish a *characteristic clause* from a relative clause of *result* or *cause*.

NOUN CLAUSES

NOUN *UT*-CLAUSES

- 637 Noun clauses introduced by *ut*
(negative: *ut nōn*, unless the main verb contains the
idea of 'willing,' in which case the negative is *nē*,
sometimes *ut nē*)
take the subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

These clauses occur:

- 638 1. After impersonal expressions, especially of 'happen-
ing,' 'following,' 'remaining.' (Most other impersonal
expressions take the infinitive.)

Accidit ut nōs nōn vidēret.

It happened that he did not see us.

Sequitur ut bonus sit.

It follows that he is good.

Saepe fit ut mīlitēs laudentur.

It often happens that soldiers are praised.

- 639 2. After most verbs meaning to 'care,' 'strive,' 'desire,'
'ask,' 'demand,' 'order,' 'persuade,' 'admonish,' 'urge,'
'allow,' 'effect,' 'obtain.'

Persuāsit ut dē fīnibus exīrent.

He persuaded (them) to go forth from their country.

Cūrā ut valeās.

Take care that you be well.

Eum monuit nē īret.

He advised him not to go.

Eīs imperāvit ut prīmā lūce reverterentur.

He commanded them to return at dawn.

Note:

- 640 1. Some verbs of this class also take the accusative with infinitive or the infinitive, especially, *volō, wish, nōlō, am unwilling, mālō, prefer, cupiō, desire, studeō, am eager, jubeō, command, licet (w. dative of person), it is allowed.*
Īre cupiō.
I desire to go.
- 641 2. *Necesse est, it is necessary, oportet, it behooves, and licet, it is allowed, take the subjunctive WITHOUT UT.* (They may also take the infinitive.)
Deus sit necesse est.
It is necessary that God exist.

NOUN CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING

- 642 Verbs of 'fearing' take
 a noun clause introduced by
nē, 'lest,' 'that'; nē nōn (or ut), 'that not';
 subjunctive;
 tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Timeō nē vincat.

I fear { lest } he will conquer.
{ that }

Timeō { nē nōn } veniat.
{ ut }

I fear that he will not come.

Note:

- 643 1. *Ut* must not be used for *nē nōn* when the verb of fearing is itself negative or when the negative belongs to a single word and not to the whole clause.
Nōn vereor nē nōn veniās.
I do not fear that you will not come.
(*Ut* may NOT be used.)
- 644 2. *I fear to do* is *vereor* (*timeō*) with the infinitive as in English.

NOUN *NĒ*-CLAUSES

- 645 Noun clauses introduced by *nē*
take the subjunctive;
tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).
They occur after verbs of 'bewareing,' 'avoiding,' 'forbidding,' 'hindering,' 'resisting,' *etc.*

Vōs prohibēbō nē flūmen trānseātis.
I shall prevent you from crossing the river.

Vōbīs obsistam nē flūmen trānseātis.
I shall oppose you lest you cross the river.

Cavē nē cadās.
Beware lest you fall.

NOUN CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *QUŌMINUS*

- 646 Noun clauses introduced by *quōminus* take the subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537). They are used after verbs of 'hindering,' 'preventing,' etc.

Nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subiret.
He did not refuse to undergo the penalty.

Quid obstat quōminus Deus sit beātus?
What prevents God from being happy?

Aetās nōn impedit quōminus litterārum studia teneāmus.
Age does not hinder our retaining interest in literature.

Note:

- 647 1. These verbs may also take *nē* (No. 645) and, when negative, *quīn* (No. 654).
- 648 2. *Nōn recūsō* may take *nē* (No. 645), *quōminus*, *quīn* (No. 654), or the infinitive.
- Īre nōn recūsāvit.*
He did not refuse to go.
- 649 3. *Prohibeō* may take *nē* (No. 645), *quōminus*, and, when negative, *quīn* (No. 654); however, oftener it takes the infinitive.

QUĪN-CLAUSES

- 650 Clauses introduced by *quīn* may be used ONLY when the main verb is NEGATIVE. They take the subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

They may occur:

- 651 1. When *quīn* equals *quī nōn* or *quod nōn*.

Nēmō est quīn sciat.

There is no one who does not know.

(*Quīn* here equals *quī nōn*.)

- 652 2. When *quīn* equals *ut nōn*.

Nihil tam difficile est quīn (= ut nōn) invēstīgārī possit.

Nothing is so difficult that it cannot be discovered.

- 653 3. Regularly after *nōn dubitō*, 'I do not doubt,' *dubium nōn est*, 'there is no doubt,' *nōn multum abest*, 'there is nothing wanting,' *facere nōn possum*, 'I cannot but,' *ferī nōn potest*, 'it is impossible.'

Nōn dubitō quīn vērū sit.

I do not doubt that it is true.

Fierī nōn potest quīn veniat.

It is impossible that he will not come.

- 654 4. Often after negative expressions, especially of 'hindering,' 'preventing,' etc.

Hoc nōn impediēt quīn vincāmus.

This will not keep us from conquering.

Note:

- 655 1. **Dubitāre** meaning *to doubt*, when affirmative, takes an indirect question.
 Dubitō num vērum sit.
I doubt whether it is true.
- 656 2. **Dubitāre** meaning *to hesitate* takes the infinitive.
 Pugnāre nōn dubitāvit.
He did not hesitate to fight.

NOUN QUOD-CLAUSES

- 657 **Quod**, 'the fact that' (explanatory) takes the indicative; tense by sense (Nos. 521-523).

These clauses may follow:

- 658 1. Demonstratives, expressed or implied, in the main clause.
Eō (or *hāc rē, eā rē, hōc*) Caesar aliis praestābat quod rēs maximās et gessit et scripsit.
In this Caesar surpassed others, that he both achieved great deeds and recorded them.
 Quod vivō, tuum est.
That I live, this I owe to you (lit.: is yours).
- 659 2. Expressions like *bene (opportūnē) accidit (fit)*, 'it is fortunate' (*lit.:* 'it happens well').
 Bene accidit quod lūna plēna erat.
It was fortunate that the moon was full.

Note: For *quod* after verbs of emotion see No. 579.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

660 **DEFINITION:** An INDIRECT question is one that depends on a verb of *saying, asking, knowing, etc.* As a noun clause it may be used as SUBJECT, OBJECT, APPOSITIVE, or PREDICATE NOUN. It is introduced by the same interrogative particles, adverbs, pronouns, and adjectives as direct questions.

661 **Note:** Nōne is NEVER used except with QUAERŌ.
Num and -ne mean *whether (if)*.
Necne is used for annōn, or *not*, in a double indirect question.
Quī (in this form, the nominative masculine singular *only*) is sometimes used for quis.

662 **INDIRECT QUESTIONS**
are put in the subjunctive;
tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Caesar rogat num militēs pugnent.
Caesar asks whether the soldiers are fighting.

Caesar rogat num militēs pugnāverint.
Caesar asks whether the soldiers fought.

Caesar rogāvit num militēs pugnārent.
Caesar asked whether the soldiers were fighting.

Caesar rogāvit num militēs pugnāvissent.
Caesar asked whether the soldiers had fought.

Rogāvit quid esset factūrus.
He asked what he was going to do.

Nesciit quanta esset insulae magnitūdō.
He did not know how large the island was.

Sciō ubi fueris.

I know where you were.

Quaesivī cognōsceretne signum.

I asked whether he recognized the seal.

Rogō utrum hoc dixeris necne.

I ask whether you said this or not.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

- 663 **DEFINITION:** Indirect discourse is speech reported in dependence on a verb of *saying, hearing, or the like.*

Direct: Pācem faciam.

I shall make peace.

"Pācem," inquit, "faciam."

He said, "I shall make peace."

Indirect: Dixit sē pācem factūrum esse.

He said he would make peace.

In indirect discourse:

- 664 1. Main declarative clauses are put in the accusative and the infinitive; tense by relation (Nos. 885-887).

Dixit sē ventūrum esse.

He said that he would come.

- 665 2. Subordinate clauses,
questions,
commands (negative *nē*),
are put in the subjunctive;
tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Rēx lēgātīs respondit: Agrōs quōs occupāvisset¹ suōs esse; nē in eōs Caesar exercitum dūceret.² Cūr Caesar ad sē vēnisset?³ In Prōvinciam reverterētur.⁴

The king answered the envoys: that the fields which he had occupied were his. Let Caesar not lead an army into them. Why had Caesar come to him? Let him return into the Province.

Explanation:

1. Quōs occupāvisset is a *subordinate* clause in indirect discourse; therefore, the *subjunctive* is used.
2. Nē . . . dūceret is a *negative command* in indirect discourse; therefore, *nē with the subjunctive* is used.
3. Cūr . . . vēnisset is a *question* in indirect discourse; therefore, the *subjunctive* is used.
4. In . . . reverterētur is a *command* in indirect discourse; therefore, the *subjunctive* is used.

Note:

- 666 1. Rhetorical questions in indirect discourse are put into the accusative with the infinitive.

Caesar militibus dixit lēgātum ex aciē fūgis; quid turpius esse?

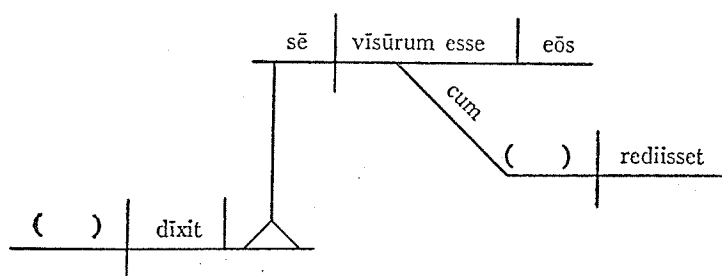
Caesar said to the soldiers that the lieutenant had fled from the battle line; what was more shameful?

- 667 2. In indirect discourse the tense of the main verb of *saying, etc.* determines whether the tenses of the subjunctives in the indirect discourse are to be *primary* or *secondary*. But the particular tense of these subjunctives, that is, whether they are to be put in the *present* or *perfect* in primary sequence, and whether they are to be put in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* in secondary sequence, depends upon their relation to the verb to which these subjunctives are directly subordinated.

Example and Explanation:

Dixit sē, cum rediisset, eōs vīsūrum esse.

He said that he would see them when he returned.



Dixit is the verb of saying which governs the entire indirect discourse. Since then it is a *secondary* tense, the subjunctive (*rediisset*) in the indirect discourse must be a *secondary* tense. However, as the diagram shows, *rediisset* is *directly subordinated* to the infinitive *vīsūrum esse*. Now in relation to this verb, *rediisset* expresses an action *completed before* the action of *vīsūrum esse*. (The act of *returning* must be *completed before* the act of *seeing*). Therefore *rediisset* is put in the *pluperfect* and not in the imperfect.

- 668 3. In passing from direct to indirect discourse, pronouns and adverbs of time will change according to sense.

Direct: Hodiē vēnī.
I came today.

Indirect: (Reported by a third person some days later.)
Dixit sē illō diē vēnisse.
He said he had come on that day.

4. Conditional sentences:

- 669 a. The **sī**-clause is treated like any subordinate clause except that an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is never changed to a primary tense.

Sciō vōs, sī possētis, mē adjūtūrōs fuisse.
I know that, if you were able, you would have helped me.

- b. The main clause goes into the infinitive, but:

- 670 1. A present subjunctive becomes a future infinitive.

Dicō tē, sī hoc dicās, errātūrum esse.
I say that you would be in error if you should say this.

- 671 2. An imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive becomes a future infinitive in **-ūrus fuisse**.

Sciō vōs, sī potuissētis, mē adjūtūrōs fuisse.
I know that, if you had been able, you would have helped me.

Note:

- 672 1. In the passive the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive may change to **futūrum fuisse ut** with the imperfect subjunctive.

Sciō, sī hoc fēcissētis, futūrum fuisse ut vituperārēmini.
I know that, if you had done this, you would have been blamed.

- 673 2. *Posse, dēbēre, oportēre* are used as future infinitives: *potuisse, dēbuisse, oportuisse* are used as the *-ūrus fuisse* forms.
- 674 c. When the pluperfect subjunctive active in the main clause of a contrary-to-fact condition becomes dependent (*v. g.*, in an indirect question, an *ut-* or *quīn-* clause), it is changed to the form *-ūrus fuerim* if the verb has a future participle.
- Nōn dubitō quīn, sī hoc dixissēs, errātūrus fuerīs.*
I do not doubt that you would have erred if you had said this.
- 675 5. **Implied Indirect Discourse:** Indirect discourse is often used when a verb of *saying*, etc., is merely implied in the context.
- Rēgulus reddī captīvōs negāvit esse ūtile; illōs enim adulescentēs esse, sē jam cōfectum senectūte.*
Regulus said that it would be useless to return the captives; for (he said) they were young men, he himself was already worn out with age.
 (The context implies that the words of Regulus are being reported.)
- 676 6. In indirect discourse subordinate clauses which are *explanatory* or *circumlocutions* are oftener put in the **INDICATIVE**.
- Quis potest esse tam mente captus quī neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum immortalium potestāte administrārī?*
Who can be so stupid as to deny that all these things which we see are administered by the power of the immortal gods?
 (*Haec omnia quae vidēmus* is merely a circumlocution for *all this visible world.*)

THE CASES

THE NOMINATIVE

- 677 The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

Maria orat.

Mary prays.

THE VOCATIVE

- 678 The person addressed is put in the vocative.

Pugnāte fortiter, milītēs!

Fight bravely, soldiers!

Tū, Domine, adjuvābis mē.

Thou, O Lord, wilt help me.

- 679 **Note:** In poetry and elevated prose the nominative may be used for the vocative or as an appositive to a vocative.

Audī tū, populus Albānus!

Hear you, Alban nation!

THE GENITIVE AS AN ADJECTIVE-EQUIVALENT

THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

- 680 The genitive, as attributive or predicative, is used to express the POSSESSOR.

Cōpiae hostium veniunt (attributive).

The enemy's troops are coming.

Filius rēgis occīsus est (attributive).

The king's son was killed.

(The son of the king was killed.)

Gallia Populī Rōmānī nōn Ariovistī est (predicative).

Gaul belongs to the Roman people not to Ariovistus.

(Gaul is the Roman People's, not Ariovistus'.)

THE EXPLANATORY GENITIVE

- 681 The genitive is used to EXPLAIN the noun it modifies.

The genitive may explain a noun in many ways. It may explain what an object is *made of*, *consists in*, *is connected with*, or it may simply give or limit the meaning of a noun. The exact connection and the best English translation will depend on the context.

Vōx vērītātis

The word "truth"

Perīculum mortis

Danger of death

Injūria lēgātōrum retentōrum

The wrong of (consisting in) detaining the envoys

Acervus frūmentī

A heap of grain (made of grain)

Agmen elephantōrum
A column of (made up of) elephants

Signum proeliī committendī
The signal for engaging in battle

Difficultātēs bellī
The difficulties of (connected with) the war

- 682 **Note:** Explanatory names with cities, mountains, rivers, etc., are generally not put in the *genitive* but in *apposition*.

Urbs Rōma
The city of Rome

Flūmen Arar
The river Saône

THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

- 683 **With nouns implying an ACTION**
the *genitive* is used to express
the **SOURCE** or **DOER** of that action.

Adventus Caesaris
The arrival of Caesar
(*i. e.*, Caesar arrived.)

Injūriæ Gallōrum
The wrongs of the Gauls
(*i. e.*, The Gauls *committed* the wrongs.)

THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

- 684 With nouns implying an ACTION
the genitive is used to express
the OBJECT OF THAT ACTION.

Timor Deī
Fear of God
(i. e., We fear God.)

Caedēs principum
The slaughter of the chiefs
(i. e., Someone slaughtered the chiefs.)

- 685 **Note:** Notice that many English prepositional phrases are translated by this genitive: a *remedy* for *anger*, *remedium irae*; a *belief* in *God*, *opiniō Deī*, etc.

THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

- 686 The genitive is used to express the WHOLE
of which the noun it modifies expresses a part.

Magna pars cōpiārum
A large part of the troops

Prīmus omnium militum
First of all the soldiers

Note:

1. The partitive genitive is used with:
687 a. nouns, neuter adjectives, neuter pronouns, of QUANTITY.

Plūs frūmentī
More (of) grain

Sī quid est in mē ingeniī
If there is any native talent in me

- 688 b. comparatives and superlatives.
Hōrum omnium fortissimī
The bravest of all these
- 689 c. numerals and pronouns like **nūllus**, *no (one)*, **nēmō**, *no one*, **uter**, *which* (of two), etc.
Ūnus eōrum
One of them
Nēmō eōrum
No one of them
- 690 d. the adverbs, **satis**, *enough*, **nimis**, *too much*, **parum**, *too little*, **partim**, *part of*, when used as nouns.
Satis frūmentī
Enough (of) grain
- 691 e. (occasionally) adverbs of place like **ubi**, *where*, **quō**, *whither*, etc.
Ubi terrārum sumus?
Where on earth are we?
- 692 2. With numerals, comparatives, and superlatives, **ex** or **dē**, less often **inter**, may be used to emphasize the relation of whole and part.
Ūnus ex multis
One of many
- 693 3. Only adjectives with genitives in **-ī** may be used as nouns in the partitive genitive.
Nihil novī (*genitive*)
Nothing new
but:
Nihil trīste (*trīste agrees with nihil*)
Nothing sad

- 694 4. English often uses an *of*-phrase where there is no PART expressed. The Latin does not use the genitive in such cases but makes the words agree.

All of us (*All* is not a PART of *us*)

Omnēs nōs (lit.: *we all*)

All of these (*All* is not a PART)

Hī omnēs (lit.: *these all*)

THE DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE

- 695 The genitive, ALWAYS accompanied by an adjective, may be used to DESCRIBE a noun or a noun-equivalent.

Homō magnae virtūtis

A man of great courage

Fossa vīgintī pedum

A twenty-foot ditch (lit.: *a ditch of twenty feet*)

Note:

1. In descriptive phrases the genitive or ablative (No. 762) may often be used at will, but:

- 696 a. Phrases of size, number, weight, time, space, worth, rank, position, value, and kind (*modus, sort, manner* and *genus, kind*) are always in the genitive.

Fossa vīgintī pedum

A twenty-foot ditch

Situs oppidī erat hūjus modī.

The position of the town was of this sort.

- 697 b. Phrases descriptive of parts of the body or external appearances are always in the ABLATIVE.

Puella caeruleis oculis
A blue-eyed girl

- 698 c. Transient qualities or states are always in the ABLATIVE.

Grātō animō sum.
I am grateful.

- 699 2. The ablative and genitive of description supply in Latin for many adjectives which that language does not possess. Thus we say: *a blue-eyed girl*. But the Romans had no adjective for *blue-eyed*; hence, they said: **puella caeruleis oculis**, *a girl with blue eyes*.

THE GENITIVE AS AN ADVERB-EQUIVALENT

THE GENITIVE OF INDEFINITE VALUE

- 700 The genitive neuter singular of adjectives of quantity is used with verbs of 'estimating,' 'valuing,' and the like to express INDEFINITE value.

Est tantī!

It is worth it! (It is of such a value.)

Permagnī eum aestimō.

I value him very highly.

Note:

- 701 1. The common genitives in this case are:

magnī	of great value, highly
permagnī	of very great value, very highly
plūris	of higher value, more (highly)
plūrimī	} of highest value, very highly (highest)
maximī	
parvī	of small value, very little
minōris	of less value, less highly
minimī	of smallest value, very little
tantī	of such a value, so much
quantī	of what value, how highly

- 702 2. The common verbs in this case are:

aestimō, 1, tr.	value, estimate
faciō, 3, tr.	regard
habeō, 2, tr.	hold
dūcō, 3, tr.	consider
putō, 1, tr.	think
sum, intr.	am

- 703 3. The genitives *nihilī* (*nothing*), *flocī* (*a straw*), and *assis* (*a cent*), and a few similar words may also be used in this construction, the last two generally after a negative.
- Nōn habeo eum assis.*
I don't consider him worth a cent.
- 704 4. Adverbs are more rarely used with these verbs than the genitive.
- Eum parvū aestimō.*
I value him little.
- 705 5. The genitives *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*, are used as genitives of price with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *costing*, and the like instead of the ablative of price (No. 788). Otherwise the ablative of price is used with such verbs.
- Quantī stat?*
How much does it cost?

THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS

- 706 After *meminisse* and *oblīvīscī*:
persons are put in the genitive;
things in the accusative or genitive
(but neuter pronouns or adjectives are always in the accusative).

Mementō meī.
Remember me.

Oblīvīscere incendiōrum!
Forget burnings!

Hoc meminī.
I remember this.

Note:

- 707 1. *Meminisse*, however, takes the accusative of persons when it means not merely *remember*, but *still remember one known personally*.

Caesarem meminit.
He remembers Caesar.

- 708 2. *Recordor*, *I, tr.*, *recall*, takes *dē* and the ablative of PERSONS but the accusative, rarely *dē* with the ablative, of THINGS.

Haec recordor.
I recall these things.
Dē amicis recordātus sum.
I recalled (the thought of) my friends.

- 709 With *interest* and *refert*:¹
the person interested is put in the genitive.

Hoc Caesaris interest.
This is of interest to Caesar.

Note:

- 710 1. When the person is expressed by a pronoun the ABLATIVE FEMININE SINGULAR of the POSSESSIVE adjective is used instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun. Thus: *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, are used instead of *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*.

Meā refert. (*not*: Meī refert.)
It concerns me.

¹Both these verbs are used IMPERSONALLY (No. 331). *Interest* means 'it interests,' 'it is important,' 'it makes a difference.' *Refert* means 'it concerns,' 'it matters,' 'it profits.'

- 711 2. The thing in question may be expressed by a neuter pronoun, an infinitive, an accusative with the infinitive, an indirect question, or a noun clause of purpose.

Omnium interest valēre.

Good health is the concern of everyone.

- 712 3. The purpose with reference to which the thing is of interest or value goes into the accusative with *ad*.

Ad discendum magni interest.

It is of great importance for learning.

- 713 4. The degree of value or interest is expressed by an adverb, an adverbial neuter, or by the indefinite genitive of value.

Ad discendum magnī (multum) interest.

It is of great importance for learning.

- 714 With *piget*, *pudet*, *paenitet*, *taedet*, *miseret*:
the PERSON feeling the emotion is put in the ACCUSATIVE;
the CAUSE OF THE EMOTION in the GENITIVE.

Taedet mē vītae.

I am weary of life.

Mē tuī pudet.

I am ashamed of you.

- 715 Note: *piget*, *pigēre*, *piguit*, 2, *tr.*, it annoys
paenitet, *paenitēre*, *paenituit*, 2, *tr.*, it repents
miseret, *miserēre*, *miseritum est*, 2, *tr.*, it grieves
pudet, *pudēre*, *puduit*, 2, *tr.*, it shames
taedet, *taedēre*, *taeduit* (*taesum est*), 2, *tr.*, it wearies

- 716 All these verbs are used *impersonally*. However, they may have an *infinitive* or a neuter pronoun (singular or plural) as a subject.

Haec tē pudent.

These things shame you.

THE GENITIVE OF THE CHARGE

- 717 The genitive is used with verbs of 'accusing,' 'condemning,' and 'acquitting' to express the CHARGE.

Fūrtī mē accūsāt.

He accuses me of theft.

Inertiae nēquitiaeque mē condemnō.

I condemn myself for criminal negligence.

- 718 Note: *Dē* and *propter* are sometimes used. Note the phrases *dē vī*, of assault, and *inter sicāriōs*, of murder (lit.: among murders).

OTHER VERBS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE

- 719 1. *Admoneō*, *admonēre*, *admonuī*, *admonitus*, 2, tr., 'warn,' 'advise'; *commoneō*, etc., 'remind'; *commonefaciō*, *commonefacere*, *commonefēcī*, *commonefactus*, 3, tr., 'remind,' 'admonish,' besides taking an accusative of the PERSON sometimes take a genitive of the THING (but always the accusative of neuter nouns and adjectives). They rarely take *dē* with the ablative of the thing.

Hūjus rei tē commonefaciō.

I admonish you of this thing.

Tē hoc moneō.

I warn you of this.

- 720 2. Verbs meaning 'want,' 'need,' and 'fill with' take either the genitive or the ablative.

Armōrum indigēmus.
We need arms.

Mūrum hominibus complēvit.
He filled the wall with men.

- 721 3. *Potior, potīrī, potītus sum*, 4, intr., 'gain possession of,' regularly takes the ablative but occasionally takes the genitive (always the genitive in the phrase *rērum potīrī*, 'to get control of affairs').

Castrīs potītus est.
He gained possession of the camp.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

- 722 Adjectives meaning 'full,' 'possessing,' 'knowing,' 'desiring,' etc., and their contraries often take the genitive.

Hūjus reī perītus
Skilled in this matter

Bellum est periculōrum plēnum.
War is full of dangers.

Caesar glōriae cupidus erat.
Caesar was desirous of glory.
Caesar was eager for glory.

Note:

- 723 1. Common adjectives with the genitive are:
plēnus, a, um, *full* (occasionally also with the ablative); inānis, e, *empty of*; indigēns, indigentis, *lacking*; particeps, *sharing in*; proprius, a, um, *proper to*; commūnis, e, *common to*; perītus, a, um, *skilled in*; memor, *mindful of*; imperītus, a, um, *unskilled in*; cupidus, a, um, *eager for*; studiōsus, a, um, *eager for, zealous for*. Similis, e, *like*, generally takes the dative, but the genitive is more common with persons and stresses the exactness of the likeness.
- 724 2. Present participles expressing not a single action but an habitual quality or a continuous state may govern the genitive.

Amāns patriae

A lover of his country (i. e., a patriot)

THE DATIVE

THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION

- 725 The dative is used with *esse* to express the possessor.

Pater mihi est.

I have a father (a father is to me).

Domus tibi est.

You have a house (a house is to you).

THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE

- 726 The dative is used to express the person (or, more rarely, the thing)
TO WHOM a statement refers or is of interest,
or FOR WHOM it is true.

Nōn nōbīs sōlīs sed et patriae nātī sumus.

We are born, not for ourselves alone, but also for our country.

Ille mihi semper deus erit.

He will always be a god to me.

Hoc est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpīrō.
This is the first town of Thessaly to those coming from Epirus.

Note:

- 727 1. This dative often expresses personal interest or emotion (*ethical dative*). Especially are the datives **mihi**, **tibi**, **vobis**, **nobis** so used.

Quid mihi Celsus agit?

And how is my Celsus doing?

- 728 2. In the expression **nōmen est**, the name is sometimes attracted into the dative but more often it is in the nominative in apposition with **nōmen**.

Mihi Caesarī nōmen est.

Mihi Caesar nōmen est.

My name is Caesar.

THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE

- 729 The dative of an abstract noun is often used to express the purpose or tendency of an action, especially after verbs of 'motion,' *esse*, and *relinquō*.

Labiēnum subsidiō mittit.

He sends Labienus to help.

Decem cohortēs auxiliō mīsit.

He sent ten cohorts to help (for a help).

Duās legiōnēs praesidiō relīquit.

He left two legions behind as a garrison.

- 730 **Note:**

1. The dative of purpose is never plural.
2. It is never modified by a genitive.
3. It is never modified by any adjective except one of quantity.

THE DOUBLE DATIVE

- 731 The dative of purpose is generally accompanied by a dative of reference, especially after *esse*.

Hoc mihi magnō dolōrī est.
This is a great sorrow to me.

Suis labōrantibus Labiēnum subsidiō mittit.
He sends Labienus to help his struggling men (as a help to his struggling men).

DATIVE OF AGENCY

The dative is used to express the agent:

- 732 1. With the gerundive and *esse*
(except when there is another dative in the same clause, No. 882).

Rōmānī nobīs vincendī sunt.
The Romans must be conquered by us.

Caesar sibi nōn exspectandum esse putāvit.
Caesar thought that he ought not to wait.

- 733 2. More rarely with the perfect passive participle, alone or in the compound tenses.

Illud mihi intellectum est.
I understood that.
(Lit.: *That was understood by me.*)

- 734 3. Rarely with other passive forms.

Neque cernitur ūllī.
And is not seen by anyone.

THE DATIVE OF LIMIT OF MOTION

- 735 The dative is used in poetry to express the 'place to' or 'towards which.'

It clāmor caelō.

A shout goes up to the sky.

THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT

- 736 **DEFINITION:** The INDIRECT OBJECT states the person (rarely the thing) to whom something is said, given, handed over, etc.

- 737 The indirect object is put in the dative.

Gallis gladiōs dedit.

He gave swords to the Gauls.

He gave the Gauls swords.

THE DATIVE AFTER COMPOUND VERBS

- 738 Many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *cum*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super* take a dative as well as an accusative object.

Mūnitiōnī Labiēnum praefēcit.

He put Labienus in charge of the fortifications.

THE DATIVE AFTER INTRANSITIVE VERBS

- 739 Many intransitive verbs take a sole object in the dative.

Ventus nāvibus nocuit.
The wind injured the ships.

Note:

- 740 1. Some of the common verbs which take this construction are:

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *intr. (dat.), profit, benefit*

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, 2, *intr. (dat.), injure, harm*

studeō, studēre, studuī, 2, *intr. (dat.), be eager for, devote energy to*

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, 3, *intr. (dat.), yield*

resistō, resistere, restitī, 3, *intr. (dat.), resist*

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, 3, *intr. (dat.), spare*

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, 2, *intr. (dat.), please*

displiceō, displicēre, displicuī, displicitum, 2, *intr. (dat.), displease*

imperō, 1, *intr. (dat.), order, enjoin*

persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, 2, *intr. (dat.), persuade*

serviō, 4, *intr. (dat.), serve*

- 741 2. Intransitive verbs are used only IMPERSONALLY in the passive (No. 332). The agent is in the ablative after *ab* (*ā*); the dative remains.

Active: *Caesar persuades me.*
Caesar mihi persuādet.

Passive: *I am persuaded by Caesar.*
Mihi ā Caesare persuādētur.
(Lit.: It is persuaded to me by Caesar.)

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

The dative is used with many adjectives:

- 742 1. Meaning 'friendly,' 'unfriendly,' 'similar,' 'dissimilar,'
'equal,' 'unequal,' 'near,' 'related to,' and the like.

Mihi amicus est.

He is friendly to me.

Proximī sunt Germānīs.

They are next to the Germans.

- 743 2. Meaning 'suitable,' 'adapted,' 'fit.'

Castrīs idōneus locus

A place suitable for a camp

DATIVE WITH VERBS OF SEPARATION

- 744 Some verbs of 'taking away,'
especially those compounded with
ab (*ā*), *dē*, and *ex* (*ē*),
take a dative of the person.

Hunc mihi timōrem ēripe.

Take this fear from me.

THE ACCUSATIVE AS PART OF THE PREDICATE

THE ACCUSATIVE AS OBJECT

- 745 The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.

Caesar fortūnam laudāvit.

Caesar praised fortune.

Ūnam partem Belgae incolunt.

The Belgians inhabit one part.

THE DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE

- 746 Verbs of 'calling,' 'electing,' 'considering as,' 'showing oneself,'
take an accusative object
and a predicate accusative (noun or adjective).

Tē imperātōrem appellō.

I call you emperor.

Mē sevērūm praebeō.

I show myself unrelenting.

- 747 Note: In the passive:

1. the accusative object becomes the *subject*;
2. the predicate accusative becomes the *predicate nominative*.

Active: Chrīstum rēgem appellāmus.

We call Christ king.

Passive: Chrīstus ā nōbīs rēx appellātur.

Christ is called king by us.

- 748 *Trānsportāre, trādūcere, trājicere*, and the like
take two accusatives:
one of the thing transported; the other of the place.

Caesar exercitum flūmen trādūxit.
Caesar led his army across the river.

Note:

- 749 1. In the passive:
the thing transported becomes the *subject*;
the other accusative *remains*.
Exercitus ā Caesare flūmen trāductus est.
The army was led across the river by Caesar.
- 750 2. The place may also be expressed by *trāns* and the accusative.
Helvētiī cōpiās suās trāns flūmen trādūxerant.
The Helvetians had led their troops across the river (active).
Cōpiae trāns flūmen ab Helvētiīs erant trāductae.
The troops had been transported across the river by the Helvetians (passive).

- 751 Verbs of 'teaching,' 'requesting,' 'demanding,' 'asking,'
'inquiring,' and *cēlō*, 'conceal,'
take two accusatives:
one of the PERSON, the other of the THING.

Christus nōs viam salūtis docet.
Christ teaches us the way of salvation.

Rem Caesarem cēlāvit.
He concealed the affair from Caesar.

Helvētiōs frūmentum flāgitāvit.
He demanded grain from the Helvetians.

Note:

- 752 1. *Quaerō, inquire*, always, and other verbs of *asking* and *inquiring* generally, take *ex* (ē) or *ab* (ā) with the ablative of the PERSON. Preferred usage must be learned from the dictionary. When the THING is expressed by a neuter pronoun, the double accusative is common.
- Ex tē causam bellī quaerō.*
I ask you the cause of the war.
- Hoc tē rogō.*
I ask this of you.
- 753 2. In the PASSIVE:
- a. the *person* becomes the *subject*;
- b. the *thing* remains *accusative*.
- Active: *Mē linguam Latīnam docuit.*
He taught me Latin.
- Passive: *Linguam Latīnam doctus sum.*
I have been taught Latin.
- 754 3. Many of these verbs are rare in the passive. Occasionally the THING becomes the subject.
- Frūmentum ab eīs flāgitābātur.*
Grain was being demanded from them.

ACCUSATIVE OF NEUTER PRONOUNS
AND ADJECTIVES

An accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective (especially of NUMBER or QUANTITY) is often used:

- 755 1. As an object of many INTRANSITIVE DATIVE verbs.
- Hoc Caesarī persuāsīt. (Hoc is accusative.)*
He persuaded Caesar of this.

- 756 2. As an object of many INTRANSITIVE verbs.

Multa peccat.

He makes many mistakes.

(Lit.: *He errs many things.*)

Hoc gaudeō. (*Hoc* is accusative.)

I rejoice at this.

- 757 3. As a SECOND object of TRANSITIVE verbs.

Illud tē moneō.

I warn you of that.

THE COGNATE ACCUSATIVE

- 758 An accusative of a word of the same stem or meaning as the verb,
generally accompanied by an adjective or pronoun,
may be used as the object
even of an otherwise intransitive verb.

Vitam jūcundam vīvere

To live a happy life

Ācerrimam pugnam pugnāre

To fight a bitter battle

THE ACCUSATIVE AS AN ADVERB-EQUIVALENT

THE ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS

- 759 The accusative is used in exclamations.

Mē miserum!

Wretch that I am! (Wretched me!)

THE ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

- 760 In poetry the accusative is used to express the part affected.

Lacrimis oculōs suffūsa nitentēs

With her shining eyes filled with tears

(Lit.: Filled with tears as to her shining eyes)

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE AND TIME

- 761 The accusative is used to express the extent of space or time (answering the questions: How far? How long?).

Duās hōrās pugnāvērunt.

They fought { two hours.
for two hours.

Duo mīlia passuum iter fēcērunt.

They marched two miles.

Flūmen decem pedēs aberat.

The river was ten feet away. ✓

THE ABLATIVE AS AN ADJECTIVE-EQUIVALENT

THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

- 762 The ablative, always accompanied by an adjective, may be used, attributively or predicatively, to describe a noun or noun-equivalent.

Caesar erat vir summō ingeniō.

Caesar was a man of the highest genius.

Puer caeruleis oculis

A blue-eyed boy

A boy with blue eyes

Vir magnō corpore

A man with a large body

- 763 Note: For the distinction between the ablative of description and the genitive of description see Nos. 696-699.

THE ABLATIVE AS AN ADVERB-EQUIVALENT

THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT

- 764 *Ā* or *ab* with the ablative is used to express the LIVING AGENT.

Deus ā Christiānis laudātur.

God is praised by Christians.

Urbs ā duce oppugnāta est.

The city was attacked by the leader.

Hostēs ab eis pulsī sunt.

The enemy were routed by them.

THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

- 765 The ablative without a preposition is used to express the non-living agent, the means, or the instrument.

Rōmānī tēlis hiberna dēfendērunt.

The Romans defended the winter quarters with darts.

Castra fossā mūnīverunt.

*They fortified the camp { with
by means of } a ditch.*

Montibus continēbantur.

They were held in by mountains.

Tēlis terrentur.

They are being terrified by darts.

THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

- 766 With verbs and adjectives of 'separating,' 'freeing,' 'depriving,' and the like:

1. With things: use the ablative without a preposition.
2. With persons: use the ablative with *dē*, *ex*, or *ab*.

Metū liber sum.

I am free from fear.

Ā tyrannīs patriam liberāvī.

I freed my country from tyrants.

Note:

- 767 ✓ 1. Many verbs, however, require a preposition with both persons and things. Such verbs must be learned individually from the vocabularies.

- 768 2. With *nāscor*, *nāscī*, *nātus sum*, 3, *intr.*, *am born*, and *orior*, *orīrī*, *ortus sum*, 4, *intr.*, *arise, spring from*, the ablative without a preposition is generally used to express *immediate source*, but *ab* (*ā*) or *ex* (*ē*) with the ablative to express *remote source*.

Nāte deā!

Goddess-born! (immediate source).

Ā Germānīs ortī sunt.

They are descended from the Germans (remote source).

THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

- 769 *Cum* with the ablative is used to express manner and attendant circumstances. When the noun is modified by an adjective *cum* may be omitted.

Militēs cum virtūte pugnāverunt.

The soldiers fought with courage.

Militēs magnā (cum) virtūte pugnāverunt. *The order*

The soldiers fought with great courage.

THE ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

- 770 The ablative without a preposition is used to express respect (answering: In what? In respect to what?).

Lēgibus inter sē differunt.

They differ among themselves in laws.

Aliōs virtūte superant.

They surpass others { *in courage.*
in respect to courage.
with regard to courage.

THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

- 771 The ablative is used to express the degree of difference with comparatives and comparative expressions.

Multō melior est.

He is much better (lit.: by much).

THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

- 772 *Cum* with the ablative is used to express accompaniment or association.

Lēgātus cum Caesare vēnit.

The envoy came

{	<u>in company with</u>
	<u>together with</u>
	<u>with</u>

Caesar.

Ūnā cum eīs proficiscuntur.

They set out with them.

Germānī sēsē cum hīs cōnjūnxērunt.

The Germans united themselves with these.

(i. e., the Germans joined these.)

- 773 **Note:** In military expressions *cum* is sometimes omitted when the noun is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

Omnibus cōpiīs subsequitur.

He follows with all his forces.

He follows in full force.

- 774 This is especially the case when, e. g., an army is considered rather as the means.

Exercitū urbem cēpit.

He took the city with his army.

(He took the city by means of his army.)

THE ABLATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

- 775 The ablative is used with adjectives meaning 'worthy of,' 'full of,' 'relying on,' and the like.

Vir laude dignus

A man worthy of praise

- 776 Note: Such adjectives are especially dignus, a, um, *worthy of*; indignus, a, um, *unworthy of*; plēnus, a, um, *full of* (which generally takes the genitive, see No. 722); frētus, a, um, *relying on*; contentus, a, um, *contented with*, etc.

THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

- 777 When *quam*, 'than,' would be followed by the nominative or the accusative, the ablative may be substituted for *quam* and the nominative or accusative.

Patria mihi vītā cārīor est (*i. e.*, quam vīta).

My country is dearer to me than life.

Note:

- 778 1. The ablative is always used instead of *quam* and the nominative or accusative of the RELATIVE pronoun.

Patria, quā nihil mihi cārīus est, mēcum loquitur.

My country, than which nothing is dearer to me, speaks with me.

- 779 2. The ablative is never used when it would be ambiguous.

I love Cicero more than Brutus (does).

Cicerōnem plūs amō quam Brūtus.

(Brūtō would substitute for either Brūtus or Brūtum; therefore it is not used.)

- 780 3. The ablative is regular in negative and interrogative sentences.

Nihil eō dulcius.

Nothing is more pleasant than that.

Nobody is more delightful than he.

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

- 781 The ablative is sometimes used to express the cause or reason.

Victōriā gaudet.

He rejoices in his victory (because of his victory, on account of his victory).

Spē dēlector.

I take delight in hope.

Note:

- 782 1. This is especially common with verbs of emotion like gaudeō, *rejoice*; laetor, *rejoice*; etc.
- 783 2. Cause is more often expressed by prepositions, such as propter, ob, *on account of*, with the accusative.
- 784 3. The *preventing cause* is expressed by prae and the ablative.

Prae gaudiō loquī nōn potuit.

He was unable to speak for joy.

THE ABLATIVE AS OBJECT

- 785 The object of *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds is put in the ablative.

Eodem cōsiliō ūsī sunt.

They used the same plan.

Note:

- 786 1. For *potior* with the genitive see No. 721.
- 787 2. *utor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus* sum, 3, *intr.*, *use*
fruo, *frui*, *fructus* sum, 3, *intr.*, *enjoy*
fungor, *fungi*, *fūctus* sum, 3, *intr.*, *perform*
potior, *potiri*, *potitus* sum, 4, *intr.*, *gain possession of*
vescor, *vesci*, 3, *intr.*, *feed on*

THE ABLATIVE OF PRICE

- 788 The ablative of a noun,
of a noun and an adjective,
or of a neuter adjective of quantity
is used with verbs of 'buying,' 'selling,' 'costing,' *etc.*,
to express the PRICE.

Domum vilī pretiō vēdidit.

He sold the house cheap (for a small price).

Corpus aurō vēdidit.

He sold the body for gold.

- 789 Note: But the genitives *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*, are used with these verbs instead of the ablative (see No. 705).

Quantī cōstat?

What does it cost?

How much does it cost?

PRONOUNS

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

- 790 **DEFINITION:** A demonstrative is a word that POINTS OUT.

This book ; *that* sword ; *these* ; *those* men.

- 791 The demonstratives are: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{hic, haec, hoc, 'this' (pl. 'these')} \\ \textit{is, ea, id, 'that' (pl. 'those')} \\ \textit{ille, illa, illud, 'that' (pl. 'those')} \\ \textit{iste, ista, istud, 'that' (pl. 'those')} \end{array} \right.$

- 792 *Hic* points out that which is close to the speaker.
Is is unemphatic and points to the person or thing spoken of.
Ille points to that which is distant or emphasized.
Iste points out that which is near the person spoken to.

1. *Hic, is, ille, iste*, may be used:

- 793 a. as PRONOUNS (rule of agreement, No. 479).

Caesar rēgem hostium cēpit. Hunc occīdit.

Caesar captured the king of the enemy. This man he killed.

Illa vērā erant.

Those things were true.

- 794 b. as ADJECTIVES (rules of agreement, Nos. 477-478).

Hanc urbem cēpērunt.

They captured this city.

In eōs milites impetum fecit.
He made an attack on those soldiers.

- 795 2. When *hic* and *ille* are used in CONTRAST, *hic* refers to the thing that is closer or that has been mentioned more recently ('the latter'); *ille* refers to the thing that is farther away or that has been mentioned previously ('the former').

Hanc urbem jam habemus; illam urbem oppugnabimus.

We already have this city; that city (yonder) we shall attack.

- 796 3. *Is* is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the THIRD person. Less frequently *ille* is so used. *Ille* is always more emphatic.

Caesar eum occidit.

Caesar killed him.

Ille captus erat.

He had been captured.

- 797 4. *Is* (less frequently *ille*) is used as the antecedent of the relative.

Is qui sine spe pugnat, non fortiter pugnat.

He who fights without hope, does not fight bravely.

- 798 5. *Ille*, especially when it follows the noun it modifies, often means 'the famous.'

Caesar ille

The famous Caesar

Ille - after - Praise

Ille - after - Condemn

Before - Plain
 demonstratives

- 799 6. *Iste* often implies contempt. (*Iste* therefore translates the English 'that' when spoken in scorn.)

Iste homō!

That fellow!

also - that ... of yours
iste ... (this)

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

- 800 *Ego* (*nōs*), *tū* (*vōs*), with the adjectives *meus*, *a*, *um*, *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*, *tuus*, *a*, *um*, *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum*, are also used as REFLEXIVES of the first and second persons for 'myself,' 'ourselves,' 'yourself,' 'yourselves,' 'my own,' 'your own,' etc.

Patrem tuum occidisti.

You killed your own father.

- 801 The reflexive pronoun of the third person is:
suī (*sibi*, *sē*, *sē*), *him*, *himself*, *her*, *herself*, *it*, *itself*, *them*, *themselves*, *oneself*.

- 802 The reflexive possessive of the third person is:
suus, *a*, *um*, *his*, *his own*, *her*, *her own*, *its*, *its own*, *their*, *their own*, *one's*, *one's own*.

Suī and *suus* MUST BE USED rather than forms of *is* (or *ille*):

(Direct Reflexive)

- 803 1. When a pronoun of the THIRD person refers to the subject of its OWN CLAUSE.

Sē rēx laudāvit.

The king praised himself.

Sē interfēcit.

He killed himself.

(Indirect Reflexive)

- 804 2. When a pronoun of the third person
in an accusative with the infinitive,
in a purpose clause,
or in an indirect question
refers to the subject of the MAIN clause.

Dixit suos ventūrōs esse.

He said his (own) men would come.

Not (rarely) in cum
temporal clauses.

Caesar dixit sē pugnātūrum esse.

Caesar said that he would fight.

Caesar militibus imperāvit ut sē sequerentur.

Caesar ordered the soldiers to follow him.

- 805 3. When a pronoun of the third person
in a subjunctive clause which expresses the thought,
intention, or will of the agent of the action
in the MAIN clause
refers to the subject of the MAIN clause.

Militēs laudāvit quod sē dēfendissent.

He praised the soldiers because they had defended him.

Dixit eōs quī sē dēfendissent praemia acceptūrōs esse.

He said that those who defended him would receive rewards.

Note:

- 806 1. Otherwise the forms of the non-reflexives *is*, *ea*, *id* (*ille*, *illa*, *illud* and *eius*, *eorum*, *illorum*, *illius*) must be used for the pronoun of the third person.
- 807 2. The reflexive forms are sometimes used to refer to other cases than that of the subject.

Hannibalem sui cives ē civitate ējēcērunt.

His own fellow citizens expelled Hannibal from the state.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

- 808 1. *Ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, is frequently used as an adjective to strengthen nouns and personal pronouns (expressed or implied). It is to be translated as 'himself,' 'herself,' 'itself,' 'themselves.' The MEANING of the word which *ipse* modifies or refers to determines which of the translations of *ipse* is to be used.

Caesar ipse vēnit.

Caesar himself came.

(Caesar is a man; therefore: *himself*.)

Ipsa vēritās pulchra est.

Truth itself is beautiful.

(Truth is a thing; therefore: *itself*.)

Ipsī vēnērunt.

They themselves came.

(*Ipsī* agrees with the subject of *vēnērunt*, *they*; therefore: *themselves*.)

- 809 2. *Ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, especially when used with a demonstrative pronoun (*hic, is, ille, iste*), may sometimes be translated by the adjective 'very.'

In hāc ipsā urbe
In this very city

- 810 3. *Ipse* is often used to strengthen REFLEXIVE pronouns. In this case however *ipse* often agrees not with the reflexive pronoun but with the subject of the clause.

Rēx sē ipse laudat.
The king praises himself. (*Ipse* strengthens *sē* but agrees with *rēx* in the nominative.)

- 811 4. *Ipse* may be used to strengthen a POSSESSIVE adjective. It is then put in the GENITIVE as though the adjective were a possessive genitive.

Propter nostram ipsōrum salutem fugimus.
We fled on account of our own safety.
Tuum ipsius patrem nōn defendistī.
You did not defend your own father.

- 812 5. *Ipse* may also be used as a pronoun. It is then translated as a pronoun of the third person with or without 'himself,' 'herself,' etc.

Caesar servōs rēgis occīdit. Ipsū cēpit.
Caesar killed the servants of the king. Him (the king himself) he took captive.
Caesar lēgātōs dīmīsīt. Ipse ad flūmen contendit.
Caesar dismissed the envoys. He (himself) hastened to the river.

IDEM, EADEM, IDEM

- 813 *Idem, eadem, idem*, 'same,' may be used either as an adjective or as a pronoun.

Adjective: In eōdem locō castra posuit.
He pitched camp in the same place.

Pronoun: Eadem dīxit.
He said the same things.

- 814 *Idem* in apposition with a subject or object often has the force of 'also,' 'likewise.'

Quod idem mihi accidit.
Which also happened to me (lit.: *which same thing*).

Bonus vir quem eundem sapientem appellāmus.
A good man whom we also call wise.

SOME

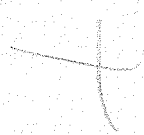
Someone (somebody), something, some:

1. Opposed to 'no one,' 'none':

- 815 a. Pronoun: *aliquis, aliquid, someone, something.*
Adjective: *aliquis, aliqua, aliquod, some.*

Aliquem vīdī.
I saw somebody.

Ad mē aliquōs librōs mitte.
Send me some books.

- 816 b. Nōnnūllī, ae, a, *some, a few*, or
sunt quī, *there are (those) who . . .*
and a characteristic clause (No. 633).
Nōnnūllī dē nostrō interitū cōgitant.
Some meditate our destruction.
Sunt quī dē nostrō interitū cōgitent.
Some meditate our destruction.
[Lit.: *There are (those) who meditate our de-*
struction.]
- 817 2. 'Some' in the sense of 'considerable number':
aliquot (indeclinable adjective), 'some.'
Jam aliquot annōs
Now for some years
3. 'Someone' ('some') in the sense of 'someone (some)
or other':
- 818 a. Pronoun: quispiam, quidpiam (or quippiam),
someone, something.
Adjective: quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, *some.*
Quaeret quispiam.
Somebody or other will ask.
- 819 b. Pronoun: nesciōquis, nesciōquid,
someone, something.
Adjective: nesciōquī, nesciōqua, nesciōquod,
some.
Nesciōquis vēnit.
Someone or other came.
- 

- 820 4. 'Someone' ('some'), 'a certain' in the sense of 'a certain one,' 'some definite one' (equivalent to the English indefinite article):

Pronoun: quīdam, quiddam, *a certain one*, *a certain thing*.

Adjective: quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *certain*.

Quīdam philosophus hoc dixit.

A (certain) philosopher said this (i. e., some definite philosopher).

Quaedam scīre dēbēs.

You ought to know certain things.

- 821 Note: Quīdam is often used as an adjective to limit a strong phrase. Translate: *certain*, *a kind of*, or *as it were*.

Poētae divīnō quōdam spīritū inflantur.

Poets are inspired by a certain divine breath.

Poets are inspired, as it were, by a divine breath.

ONE . . . OTHER (ANOTHER)

- 822 1. Of more than two:

one . . . another, alius, a, ud . . . alius, a, ud.

some . . . others, aliī, ae, a . . . aliī, ae, a.

Alius divitiās quaerit, alius honōrēs.

One seeks riches, another honors.

Aliī fūgērunt, aliī sē dēdidērunt.

Some fled, others surrendered.

823 2. Of two only:

one . . . the other, alter, altera, alterum . . . alter, altera, alterum.

one (group) . . . the other (group), alterī, ae, a . . . alterī, ae, a.

Alter sapientior est, alter fortior.

The one is wiser, the other braver.

Alterī Caesarī inimicī sunt, alterī amīcī.

The one party is hostile to Caesar, the other party is friendly.

ONE

824 1. When 'one' refers to one OF TWO, it is generally translated by *alter, altera, alterum*.

Alter oculus, one eye

(We have only TWO eyes.)

Alter frāter, one brother

(When there are only TWO brothers.)

825 2. When the English has: "One does one thing, another another," the Latin combines this into one expression, thus:

One seeks one thing, another another.

Alius aliud quaerit.

One praises one person, another another.

Alius alium laudat.

Some think one thing, others another thing.

Aliī alia sentiunt.

- 826 3. In simple enumerations *alter*, *altera*, *alterum* is used for 'the second,' instead of *secundus*, *a*, *um*.

Prima diēs, altera diēs, tertia diēs
The first day, the second day, the third day

OTHER

- 827 1. 'The other' (of TWO): *alter*, *altera*, *alterum*.
 'The other group' (of TWO): *alterī*, *alterae*, *altera*.

Alter occisus est.
The other was killed.

Alterī Caesarem adjūvērunt.
The other group helped Caesar.

- 828 2. 'Others,' in general: *aliī*, *ae*, *a*.

Rōmānī aliōs regere scīvērunt.
The Romans knew how to rule others.

- 829 3. 'The others,' 'the rest,' after a part is removed:

a. *cēterī*, *ae*, *a*, (*all*) *the rest*.

Hic miles cēterōs virtūte superat.

This soldier surpasses { (all) the others } in courage.
the rest

- 830 b. *reliquī*, *ae*, *a*, *the others*, *those remaining*.

Duās legiōnēs in Belgās mīsit, reliquās in hibernās dēdūxit.

He sent two legions into Belgium, the others (the remaining legions) he led into winter quarters.

EACH

- 831 1. Pronoun: *quisque, quidque*, 'each one,' 'each thing,'
'every one.'

Adjective: *quisque, quaeque, quodque*, 'each,' 'every'
(or *unusquisque, unaquaeque*, etc.)

- 832 a. with reflexive pronouns;

Suam quisque patriam diligit.

Each man
Every man } loves his own country.

- 833 b. with ordinal numerals;

Decimum quemque occidī jussit.

He ordered every tenth man to be killed (lit.: *each tenth man*).

- 834 c. with relative and interrogative pronouns and in indirect questions;

Quem quisque diligit, eum laudat.

Each man praises the one he loves.

Sciō quid quisque dixerit.

I know what each one said.

- 835 d. with superlatives *quisque* is nearly ALWAYS in the singular except when neuter.

Optimus quisque patriam diligit.

Each best man loves his country.

All the best men love their country.

Optima quaeque quaerimus.

We seek all the best things.

- 836 2. In other cases *singulī*, *ae*, *a* or *ūnusquisque* are generally used for 'each.' Note that *singulī* is always PLURAL.

Singulī abiērunt.
Ūnusquisque abiit.
Each one went away.

3. 'Each,' 'either,' 'both,' when speaking of TWO:

- 837 a. When the two are spoken of SEPARATELY:

Pronoun or adjective: *uterque*, *utroque*, *utrumque*,
each, *either*.

- 838 b. When the two are spoken of TOGETHER:

Pronoun or adjective: *ambo*, *ambae*, *ambo*, *both*.

Duo senātōrēs mihi obviam sunt factī; ambōs salūtāvī; uterque resalūtāvit.

Two senators met me; I greeted them both; each returned my greeting.

4. 'Each other'; 'one another' (reciprocal pronouns):

- 839 a. *alter . . . alter*; *alius . . . alius*;

Frātrēs alter alterum dīligere dēbent.

Brothers ought to love each other.

(Lit.: *Brothers ought to love, each the other.*)

(*Alter* is in apposition, though SINGULAR, with the subject; *alterum* is the object of *dīligere*.)

Gallī alius alium adjuvant.

The Gauls help each other.

- 840 b. *inter sē*, *inter nōs*, *inter vōs*.

Obsidēs inter sē dant.

They give each other hostages.

(Lit.: *They give hostages among themselves.*)

ANYONE; ANY

841 1. Unemphatic:

Chiefly after *sī, nisi, num, nē, quō, quantō, quandō, ubi, unde, ut (as), cum, alius*:

Pronoun: *quis, quid, anyone, anything*.

Adjective: *quī, qua (quae), quod, any*.

Nē quis . . . mīrētur . . .

Lest anyone should marvel . . .

Sī qua causa est . . .

If there is any reason . . .

2. Emphatic:

842

a. In questions expecting a negative answer:

Pronoun: *ecquis, ecquid = num quis*.

Adjective: *ecquis, ecqua, ecquod*.

Ecquis hoc crēdit?

Does anyone believe this?

(Answer expected: "No one.")

843

b. In interrogative and negative sentences and after *vix, vērō, quasi, quasi vērō, sine (without)*:

Pronoun: *quisquam, quidquam (or quicquam), anyone, anything*.

Adjective: *ūllus, a, um, any*.

Vōbīs nōn dabō quidquam.

I will not give you anything.

Sine ūllā spē

Without any hope

844

c. In positive declarative sentences (*anyone at all*):Pronoun: quīvīs, quāevīs, quīdvīs
quīlibet, quāelibet, quīdlibet.Adjective: quīvīs, quāevīs, quōdvīs
quīlibet, quāelibet, quōdlibet.Quīvīs hoc facere potest.Anyone (*at all*) can do this.

ADJECTIVES

SPECIAL USES OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives may be used as nouns. This use is:

1. Very frequent, especially to designate a general class:

- 845 a. in the masculine plural.

Nostrī fortiter pugnābant.
Our men were fighting bravely.

Fortūna fortēs adjuvat.
Fortune helps the brave.

- 846 b. in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

Vēra dicit.
He speaks the truth (lit.: true things).

2. Less frequent:

- 847 a. in the masculine singular and only to stand for a class.

Sapiēns omnia sua sēcum portat.
The wise man carries all his possessions with him.

- 848 b. in the neuter singular, generally of adjectives of the first and second declensions only.

Vērum dicit.
He speaks the truth.

Parvō contentus est.
He is content with little.

- 849 Latin often uses ADJECTIVES expressing a state of body or soul where the English uses ADVERBS.

Militēs in castra tūtī pervēnērunt.
The soldiers arrived in the camp safely (lit.: safe).

- 850 *Ultimus, sōlus, prīmus*, and similar adjectives are often equivalent to a relative clause.

Prīmus in urbem vēnit.

He was the first { *one who came into the city.*
to come into the city.

(Lit. : *He came as the first one.*)

- 851 *Summus*, 'highest'; *medius*, 'middle'; *īmus*, 'lowest'; *infinus*, 'lowest'; *interior*, 'inner'; *intimus*, 'innermost'; *prīmus*, 'first'; *postrēmus*, 'last'; *ultimus*, 'last'; *reliquus*, 'remaining' (generally standing before their noun), often mean PART of the object.

Militēs in summō colle instrūxit.

He drew up the soldiers on the top of the hill.

Per mediam urbem contendit.

He hastened through the middle of the city.

- 852 When *multus* is joined to another adjective to modify the same noun *et* is generally used.

Erant multae et magnae urbēs in Italiā.

There were many large cities in Italy.

COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

The Latin comparative may be translated:

- 853 1. by the English comparative.
Hoc flūmen lātius est quam Tiberis.
This river is wider than the Tiber.
- 854 2. by somewhat or too with the English positive.
Mōns altior est.
The mountain is somewhat high.

- 855 **Note:** In expressions like: "He was braver than he was safe," the Latin generally uses the **COMPARATIVE** in both parts of the comparison.

Fortior erat quam tūtor.
He was braver than he was safe.

SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

- 856 Superlative adjectives are used much more in Latin than in English. They are therefore weaker and may often be translated by 'very' with the English positive or even by the English positive alone.

Maximum impetum in eōs fēcērunt.
They made a very strong (or strong) attack on them.

Note:

- 857 1. To express the **ABSOLUTE** superlative, the Latin superlative is used with **ūnus, a, um** and **omnium** or simply with **omnium**.

Hic mōns ūnus omnium altissimus est.
This mountain is the (one) highest of all.

Hoc flūmen est omnium longissimum.
This river is the longest of all.

- 858 2. When a superlative modifies the antecedent of a relative it is regularly put into the relative clause.

Centuriōnem quī fortissimus in castrīs erat mīsit.
He sent the bravest centurion who was in the camp.
(Not: Centuriōnem fortissimum . . .)

- 859 3. The adverb **vel, very**, is sometimes used to strengthen a superlative.

Vel maxima virtūs
The very greatest courage

VERBAL NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

THE SUPINE

1. IN -UM

- 860 The supine in *-um* may be used to express purpose after verbs of motion.
It may have a word-object (not a clause-object).
It may be modified by adverbs.

Lēgātī pācem petitum vēnērunt.

Envoys came to seek peace.

Eōs ad mē mane salūtātum mīserās.

You had sent them to salute me in the morning.

2. IN -Ū

- 861 The supine in *-ū* may be used to express RESPECT after *fās est*, *nefās est*, *opus est*, and some adjectives.
It may take only a clause-object (not a word-object).
It may not be modified by an adverb.

Mirābile dictū

Marvelous to relate

Nefās est dictū miseram esse tālem senectūtem.

It is criminal to call such an old age miserable.

Note:

- 862 1. The only supines in *-ū* in common use are: dictū, *to say*; factū, *to do*; audītū, *to hear*; cognitū, *to learn*; vīsū, *to see*; intellēctū, *to understand*.
- 863 2. The adjectives which take a supine in *-ū* are especially: *facilis* (*difficilis*), *pulcher*, *crēdibilis* (*incrēdibilis*), *bonus* (*malus*).

THE GERUND

864 The gerund is a verbal noun. It has all the cases except the nominative.

As a VERB: 1. It is modified by adverbs and takes objects.

2. It is always active in meaning.

As a NOUN it is used in all the case usages of nouns, *but:*

1. The accusative of the gerund is used chiefly after ad or in; not as the object of a transitive verb.

2. The ablative is never used with sine, without, or cum, *with*.

Genitive: Pugnandī cupidī sunt.
They are eager for fighting.
They are eager to fight.

Pugnandī causā vēnērunt.
They came for the sake of fighting.

Dative: Scribendō sē dedit.
He devoted himself to writing.

Accusative: Ad explorandum missus est.
He was sent for reconnoitering.
He was sent to reconnoiter.

Ablative: Dē bene scribendō locūtus est.
He spoke about writing well.

Mēns cōgitandō excolitur.
The mind is developed by thinking.

THE GERUNDIVE

THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION

865 The gerundive is a **PASSIVE VERBAL ADJECTIVE**.
As a **VERB** it expresses action and may be modified by
adverbs and adverbial phrases.

As an **ADJECTIVE** it agrees with a noun or noun-
equivalent.

The gerundive has two general uses:

1. As an attributive adjective in the oblique cases. In
this use it directly modifies a noun and has the mean-
ing of:

866 a. a present passive participle.
ponte faciendō
by building a bridge
(Lit.: *by a bridge being built*)

867 b. a future passive participle.
dē ponte faciendō
about building a bridge
(Lit.: *about a bridge to be built*)

2. To express obligation or necessity:

868 a. as a predicate adjective with *sum*. (See Nos. 878-
884.)

869 b. as an attributive adjective.
Hostis nōn metuendus
An enemy not to be feared

THE ATTRIBUTIVE GERUNDIVE AS A
SUBSTITUTE FOR THE GERUND

- 870 When the gerund would have an ACCUSATIVE OBJECT the gerundive construction is generally used instead of the gerund.

EXAMPLE: They are desirous of seeing the city.

The gerund construction would be: Urbem videndi cupidi sunt. Since the urbem would be an accusative object the construction is changed to the gerundive as follows:

1. The accusative object is put in the case of the gerund.

Urbis (The gerund videndi is genitive.)

2. The gerundive is made to agree with it.

Urbis videndae

The complete sentence now is:

Urbis videndae cupidi sunt.

(Lit.: *They are eager for the city to-be-seen.*)

They are desirous of seeing the city.

They are eager to see the city.

EXAMPLE: They were sent to capture the town.

The gerund construction would be:

Ad capiendum urbem missi sunt.

They were sent for capturing the city.

The gerundive construction:

Ad urbem capiendam missi sunt.

They were sent for the city to-be-captured.

Note:

- 871 1. The gerundive construction should always be used when the gerund with an object would be in the dative or would follow a preposition.
- Ad urbem videndam vēnit.
He came to see the city.
(The gerund would be: ad urbem videndum, which should never be used.)
- 872 2. The gerundive construction after *ad* or *causā* (*w. gen.*) is a common way of expressing purpose.
- They came to see the leader.*
Ad ducem videndum vēnērunt.
They came to seize the bridge.
Pontis capiendī causā vēnērunt.
- 873 3. The gerundive construction is NOT used:
- a. when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective.
- Vērum investigandī causā
For the sake of discovering the truth
- 874 b. when a series of *-ōrums* or *-ārums* would result.
- For the sake of taking up these arms*
(Gerundive would be: Hōrum armōrum capiendōrum causā.)
Haec arma capiendī causā
- 875 4. As a rule only transitive verbs can be used in the gerundive. *Ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, however, which were transitive in old Latin, are regularly used in this gerundive construction.
- In fungendō mūnere
In performing the duty
(Lit.: *In the duty-being-performed*)

- 876 5. DEPONENT verbs are used in this gerundive construction.

In eīs sequendis multās hōrās cōsūmpsērunt.

They consumed many hours $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in pursuing them.} \\ \text{in them-being-pursued.} \end{array} \right.$

- 877 6. The forms meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī are always used with the gerundive in the singular agreeing with them, irrespective of gender or number.

Nostrī servandī causā in castra fūgimus.

We fled into the camp to save ourselves.

(Nostrī refers to we in the verb fūgimus but the gerundive is servandī not servandōrum.)

Mulierēs suī cōservandī causā fūgērunt.

The women fled to save themselves.

(Cōservandī not cōservandārum is used, although suī refers to the FEMININE PLURAL mulierēs.)

THE GERUNDIVE AS A PREDICATE ADJECTIVE WITH SUM

- 878 To express OBLIGATION or NECESSITY the gerundive may be used as a predicate adjective with the proper form of the verb *sum*.

Deus laudandus est.

God is to-be-praised.

God should be praised.

God ought to be praised.

God must be praised.

God has to be praised.

It is necessary to praise God.

*oportet - can also
be used but a
gerundive is
more common*

See if verb is transitive in English - Then see if it is transitive in Latin - If transitive have subject as subject and use gerundive. (Obligation or Necessity)
 Vōs laudandī nōn estis.
 You should not be praised. In transitive sentence the receiver of the action becomes subject.
 Hoc faciendum nōn fuit.
 This was not to-be-done. (gerundive expression)

879 **Note:** As a predicate adjective laudandus, a, um follows the usual rule of agreement for predicate adjectives, Nos. 474-476.

880 **With transitive verbs use the gerundive personally.**

Deus laudandus est.
 God is to be praised.

Dixī Deum laudandum esse.
 I said God should be praised.

Rogāvit num Deus laudandus esset.
 He asked whether God should be praised.

881 **With intransitive verbs or with transitive verbs without a subject use the gerundive impersonally.**

(If an intransitive verb has a subject in English, put the subject in the case governed by the verb.)

Transitive verb without a subject:

Vincendum est.
 (It must be conquered.)
 It is necessary to conquer.

Genitive verb:

Meī obliviscendum nōn est.
 I should not be forgotten.

Remember - Occasionally a transitive verb is used intransitively.

If the verb is intransitive in Latin then use it impersonally.

Dative verb:

Deō serviendum est.
God should be served.

Ablative verb:

Diligentiā ūtendum est.
Care should be used.

Intransitive verb in the accusative with the infinitive:

Dixi Deō serviendum esse.
I said that God should be served.

Intransitive verb in a subordinate clause:

Rogavit num Deō serviendum esset.
He asked whether God should be served.

DATIVE OF AGENCY

882 To express the AGENT with the gerundive use the DATIVE;

but *ab* (*ā*) and the ablative when there is another dative in the same clause.

Deus nōbīs laudandus est.

We should praise God.
We ought to praise God.
We are to praise God.
We must praise God.

It is necessary that we praise God.

It is necessary for us to praise God.

God should be praised by us.

God ought to be praised by us.

Diligentiā nōbīs ūtendum est.

We should use care.

No real need to translate
"we" Only when
specific - they-he etc.

Translate it
when it uses "ab"
because of double dative

of Agency

N.B. Do not use ab (a) in a
gerundive construction unless it is
required as in 882. Trans. (he-they etc) by
dative!

Deō ā nōbīs serviendum est.

We should serve God.

(Ā nōbīs is used because of the dative Deō.)

Dīxī Deō ā nōbīs serviendum esse.

I said we should serve God.

Dīxī Deum nōbīs laudandum esse.

I said we should praise God.

Rogāvit num Deus nōbīs laudandus esset.

He asked whether we should praise God.

Rogāvit num Deō ā nōbīs serviendum esset.

He asked whether we should serve God.

THE GERUNDIVE AS A PREDICATE ADJECTIVE WITH OTHER VERBS

- 883 *Dō*, 'I give'; *trādō*, 'I hand over'; *cūrō*, 'I take care of'; *suscipiō*, 'I undertake'; and the like may take an accusative object and a gerundive in agreement.

Urbem militibus dīripiendam trādīdit.

He handed over the city to the soldiers to plunder.

(Lit.: the city to-be-plundered.)

Classem aedificandam suscēpī.

I undertook the building of a fleet.

(Lit.: I undertook a fleet to-be-built.)

- 884 **Note:** In the passive, the object will become the subject nominative and the gerundive will agree with it.

Urbs militibus dīripienda trādita est.

The city was handed over to the soldiers to be plundered.

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE AND THE PARTICIPLE

TENSE BY RELATION

- 885 1. The PRESENT infinitive and the PRESENT participle express action as GOING ON AT THE TIME of the action of the finite verb in their clause.

Infinitive: Sciō tē pugnāre.

I know that you are fighting.

(You are now fighting and I now know it.)

Scivī tē pugnāre.

I knew that you were fighting.

(You were then fighting and I then knew it.)

Participle: Ōrāns Deum laudō.

Praying I praise God.

(I praise God while praying.)

Eōs pugnantēs hortātus est.

He encouraged them fighting (as they fought).

(He encouraged them at the time when they were fighting.)

Pugnāns vulnerātus est.

He was wounded (while) fighting.

(He was wounded at the time when he was fighting.)

Servīs clāmantibus, dominus occīsus est.

The master was killed while the slaves shouted.

(The slaves were shouting at the same time that the master was killed.)

- 886 2. The PERFECT infinitive and the PERFECT participle express action as COMPLETED BEFORE the action of the verb in their clause.

Infinitive: Sciō tē hoc fēcisse.

I know that you did this.

(i. e., *You did it before and I now know it.*)

Scivī tē hoc fēcisse.

I knew that you had done this.

(i. e., *You did it before I knew it.*)

Participle: Militēs instructī impetum sustinent.

The soldiers, having been drawn up, are withstanding the attack.

(i. e., *They have been drawn up and are NOW withstanding the attack.*)

Militēs instructī impetum sustinuērunt.

The soldiers, having been drawn up, withstood the attack.

(i. e., *They were drawn up and then withstood the attack.*)

Urbe captā, cōpiam frūmentī habēmus.

The city having been captured, we have a supply of grain.

(i. e., *After the capture of the city we now have a supply of grain.*)

Urbe captā, hostēs sē dēdidērunt.

The city having been captured, the enemy surrendered.

(i. e., *The city was captured and then they surrendered.*)

- 887 3. The **FUTURE** infinitive and the **FUTURE** participle express action which **WILL TAKE PLACE AFTER** the action of the verb in their clause.

Infinitive: Sciō tē Gallōs victūrum esse.

I know that you will conquer the Gauls.

Scīvī tē Gallōs victūrum esse.

I knew that you would conquer the Gauls.

Participle: Itūrus haec dīcit.

Being about to go, he says these things.

Itūrus haec dīxit.

Being about to go, he said these things.

THE INFINITIVE

888 The infinitive is a VERBAL NOUN.

As a VERB it has TENSE and VOICE, may take OBJECTS, both direct and indirect, and may be modified by adverbs or adverbial expressions.

As a NOUN it may be used as a NEUTER noun in noun constructions but only in the nominative and accusative cases. An adjective or pronoun may agree with the infinitive in the neuter singular. (See first example under No. 889.)

THE INFINITIVE IN NOUN CONSTRUCTIONS

889 1. The infinitive may be used as SUBJECT, OBJECT, PREDICATE NOUN, and (rarely) appositive.

As subject: *Ōrāre est bonum.*

To pray
Praying } *is good.*

As object: *Pugnāre possum.*

I am able to fight.

Venīre parant.

They prepare to come.

Fortiter pugnāre possunt.

They can fight bravely.

They are able to fight bravely.

Gallī sē dēfendere nōn potuērunt.

The Gauls were unable to defend themselves.

As predicate noun: *Laudāre Deum est ōrāre.*

To praise God is to pray.

- 890 **Note:** In this construction the indefinite reflexive (*oneself*, etc.) as object of the infinitive is *sē*.

Nōn est malum *sē* dēfendere.

It is not bad to defend oneself.

2. This use of the infinitive is very common:

- 891 a. with nouns and neuter adjectives with *est*, *erat*, etc.

Ōrāre est bonum.

To pray is good.

Mōs fuit fortēs laudāre.

It was the custom to praise the brave.

- 892 b. after many impersonal verbs (*piget*, *it annoys*; *pudet*, *it shames*; *paenitet*, *it repents*; *oportet*, *it behooves*; *licet*, *it is allowed*; *necesse est*, *it is necessary*; *praestat*, *it is better*; *placet*, *it pleases*; *convenit*, *it is becoming*) and after verbs and phrases meaning *will*, *try*, *dare*, *hesitate*, *begin*, *continue*, *cease*, *hasten*, *neglect*, *forget*, *resolve*, *teach*, *learn-to*, *know-how-to*, *fear-to*, etc.

Īre necesse est.

It is necessary to go.

Īre cōstituunt.

They determine to go.

Pugnāre timent.

They fear to fight.

- 893 3. When the SENSE requires it, the infinitive may have a SUBJECT IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.¹

As subject: Populōs inter sē pugnāre malum est.
That nations fight among themselves is bad.

As object: Caesar eōs in castris manēre iussit.
Caesar ordered them to remain in the camp.

Note:

- 894 1. A predicate adjective or predicate noun after the infinitive agrees with the word, expressed or understood, to which it refers.

Oportet militēs esse parātōs.
It behooves soldiers to be prepared.

Semper esse parātum bonum est (hominem understood).
It is good to be always ready.
(It is good that a man be always ready.)

Puerī bonī esse possunt.
Boys can be good.
(Bonī here REFERS to puerī and hence must agree with it.)

- 895 2. Jubeō, order, vetō, forbid, sinō, allow, are used personally in the passive.

Active: Eōs pugnāre iussit.
He ordered them to fight.

Passive: Eī pugnāre iussī sunt.
They were ordered to fight.

- 896 3. Note that the infinitive in these constructions (Nos. 889-895) is regularly in the PRESENT tense unless (rarely) the SENSE demands a different tense.

Prō patriā pugnāvisse pulchrum est.
It is glorious to have fought for one's fatherland.

¹This is common especially with *volō*, 'wish,' *nōlō*, 'am unwilling,' *mālō*, 'prefer,' *cupiō*, 'desire,' *patior*, 'allow'; with the active voice of *jubeō*, 'order,' *vetō*, 'forbid,' *sinō*, 'permit'; and with verbs of emotion (No. 715).

THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE AFTER
VERBS OF SAYING, THINKING, AND THE LIKE

- 897 Verbs of 'saying,' 'thinking,' 'perceiving,' and the like take the **ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE**. The subject of the infinitive is in the **ACCUSATIVE**; the verb is in the infinitive; the tense of the infinitive is determined strictly by the rule: Tense by Relation (Nos. 885-887).

Sciō tē pugnāre.

I know that you are fighting.

- 898 In this use the accusative with the infinitive is equivalently a **NOUN CLAUSE**.

Audīvī tē pugnāre.

I heard that you were fighting.

Putō tē pugnātūrum esse.

I think that you will fight.

Sciō tē pugnāvisse.

I know that you { fought.
 were fighting.

Scīvī tē pugnāvisse.

I knew that you had fought.

Putāvī tē pugnātūrum esse.

I thought that you would fight.

Sciō eōs vincī.

I know that they are being conquered.

Sciō Gallōs ā Rōmānīs victōs esse.

I know that Gauls were conquered by the Romans.

Note:

- 899 1. The future infinitive active is formed with the future participle active and the present infinitive of **sum, esse**. The perfect infinitive passive is formed with the perfect participle passive and the present infinitive of **sum, esse**. In both cases the participle is used in a compound tense like a predicate adjective and must therefore agree with the subject accusative.

Dīcō militēs nostrōs victūrōs esse.

I say that our men will conquer.

Dīcō hanc gentem pugnātūrā esse.

I say that this nation will fight.

Audīvī Rōmān oppugnātā esse.

I heard that Rome had been attacked.

*Sciō Rōmānōs victōs nōn esse.

I know that the Romans were not conquered.

- 900 2. A predicate adjective in the accusative with the infinitive will of course agree with the subject accusative.

Dīcō hanc cīvitatē liberā semper futūrā esse.

I say that this state will always be free.

Sciō Deū esse bonū.

I know that God is good.

3. When the verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving, etc.*, is in the PASSIVE:

- 901 a. If it is a COMPOUND tense, it is generally used impersonally and takes the accusative with the infinitive.

Trāditum est primōs rēgēs bonōs fuisse.

It has been handed down that the first kings were good.

- 902 b. If it is an UNCOMPOUNDED tense, it is generally used personally and takes the infinitive, tense by relation.

Rēx dīcitur fūgissee.

The king is said to have fled.

It is said that the king has fled.

Ille vir dīcitur esse rēx.

That man is said to be the king.

It is said that that man is the king.

Dīcitur occīsus esse.

He is said to have been killed.

It is said that he has been killed.

Putātūr rēx futūrus esse.

It is thought that he will be king.

(Lit.: *He is thought to be about to be king.*)

- 903 **Note:** Videor, *seem*, always follows No. 902, but vidētur mihi, etc., *it seems well to me*, etc. (*I decide*) is always used impersonally and takes the (accusative with) the infinitive. Crēditur, *it is believed*, regularly takes the accusative with the infinitive.

Eum audire vīsus sum.

I seemed to hear him.

Nōbīs vīsum est { lēgātōs mittere.
lēgātōs mittī.

We decided to send envoys.

Crēditur eum esse rēgem.

It is believed that he is a king.

THE INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS

- 904 The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used in exclamations and exclamatory questions.

Tē hoc nōn vidēre!

(The idea) that you did not see this!

Mātrēm mortuam esse?

Mother dead?

HISTORICAL INFINITIVE

- 905 The present infinitive is sometimes used for vividness in narration instead of the imperfect indicative. The subject is in the nominative. This infinitive regularly occurs in a series of two or more verbs; rarely in one single verb.

Hostēs ex omnibus partibus impetum facere; tēla con-
jicere.

*The enemy were attacking from all sides; they were
hurling darts.*

THE INFINITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES

- 906 The infinitive is used in poetry to complete the meaning of many adjectives WHICH DO NOT TAKE THE INFINITIVE IN PROSE. (Parātus, a, um, *ready*, and assuētus, a, um, *accustomed*, are used with the infinitive in good prose.)

Audāx omnia perpeti

Bold to endure everything

THE PARTICIPLE

- 907 1. The participle is a verbal adjective.
As a VERB it has VOICE AND TENSE, takes OBJECTS, both direct and indirect, and is MODIFIED by adverbs and adverbial phrases.
As an ADJECTIVE it modifies nouns or noun-equivalents and follows the regular rule for agreement of adjectives, Nos. 474-478.
- 908 2. The TENSE of participles is always according to the rule: TENSE BY RELATION.
- 909 3. There are only three participles in Latin:
Present participle active: laudāns, *praising*
Future participle active: laudātūrus, a, um, (*being*)
about to praise
Perfect participle passive: laudātus, a, um, *praised*,
having been praised
- 910 Note: DEPONENT verbs alone have a perfect participle ACTIVE; locūtus, a, um, *having spoken* (NOT *having been spoken*).
- 911 4. A participle may be used to modify any noun or pronoun in any construction.
- Gallōs captōs interfēcit.
He killed the captured Gauls.
- Hāc rē commōtus, fūgit.
Alarmed by this affair, he fled.
- Frūmentum Gallīs captīs dedit.
He gave grain to the captured Gauls.

Caesar propter lēgātōs occīsōs bellum gessit.
Caesar because of the murdered envoys waged war.

Militū occīsōrum virtūtem laudāvit.
He praised the courage of the slaughtered soldiers.

Magna frūmentī cōpia in urbe captā erat.
There was a great supply of grain in the captured city.

Haec pollicitus abiit.
Having promised these things, he went away.

Rēgem profectum interfēcērunt.
They killed the king after he had set out (lit.: the king having set out).

Pugnāns occisus est.
He was killed (while) fighting.

Rēgem proficiscentem interfēcērunt.
They killed the king as he was setting out (lit.: the king setting out).

Moritūrus haec dīxit.
He said these things as he was about to die (lit.: being about to die).

Rēgem profectūrum interfēcērunt.
They killed the king as he was about to set out (lit.: the king being about to set out).

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

912 The ablative absolute consists of:

a noun or pronoun	} in the ablative and a	{ participle, adjective, or noun	} in agreement.

The noun or pronoun in the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE may not express the same person or thing as another noun or pronoun in the same clause; tense of the participle by relation (Nos. 885-887).

Urbe captā, Caesar pācem fēcit.

The city having been captured, Caesar made peace.

Caesare duce, Rōmānī hostēs vicērunt.

Caesar (being) leader, the Romans conquered the enemy.

Mē invītō, hoc fēcit.

I being unwilling, he did this.

Duce moritūrō, milītēs fūgērunt.

The leader being about to die, the soldiers fled.

913

In the examples given above the ablative absolute is translated by the English nominative absolute. As this construction is generally avoided in English, the ablative absolute should generally be translated by other clauses and phrases. The ablative absolute is a general adverbial construction and may take the place of many different kinds of clauses and phrases. Study these examples:

His dictīs, abiit.

Lit.: *These things having been said, he went away.*

Having said these things, he went away (ACTIVE English participle).

When (after) these things had been said, he went away.

Caesare absente, hostēs ad castra advēnērunt.

Lit.: Caesar being absent, the enemy arrived at the camp.

While Caesar was away, the enemy arrived at the camp.

In Caesar's absence, the enemy arrived at the camp.

Caesare absente, tamen Rōmānī nōn fūgērunt.

Lit.: Caesar being absent, the Romans nevertheless did not flee.

Although Caesar was absent, the Romans did not flee.

Eō interfectō, militēs fugient.

Lit.: He having been killed, the soldiers will flee.

If he is killed, the soldiers will flee.

Tē duce, hostēs vincēmus.

Lit.: You being leader, we shall conquer the enemy.

With you as leader, we shall conquer the enemy.

Under your leadership, we shall conquer the enemy.

Led by you, we shall conquer the enemy.

- 914 To translate a perfect participle active into Latin; either a deponent verb must be used or the sentence must be changed so that the participle is passive. (Do not change the sense!)

Having said this, Caesar went away.

(*Having said this* is a perfect participle ACTIVE.)

1. Using a deponent:

Caesar, haec locūtus, abiit.

2. Changing into the PASSIVE:

This having been said, Caesar went away.

His dictis, Caesar abiit.

RULES FOR PLACE

WHERE?

- 915 To express place *WHERE*
use *in* and the ablative;
but locative¹ of names of towns and small islands
and *domī, rūrī, humī*.

Nōn Rōmae sed in Galliā
Not at Rome but in Gaul

WHENCE?

- 916 To express place *FROM WHICH*
use *ex, dē, ab* and the ablative;
but ablative alone of names of towns and small islands
and *domō, rūre, humō*.

Nōn solum Rōmā sed ex Italiā
Not only from Rome, but out of Italy

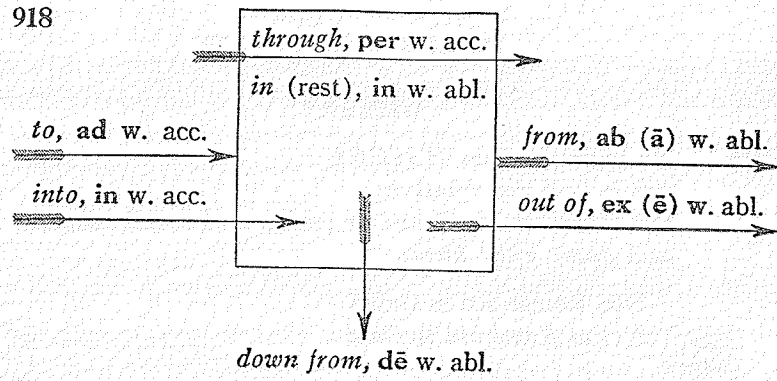
WHITHER?

- 917 To express place *TO WHICH*
use *ad* or *in* and the accusative;
but accusative alone of names of towns and small
islands
and *domum, rūs*.

Rōmam in Italiam
Into Italy to Rome

¹See No. 30.

918



RULES FOR TIME

HOW LONG?

- 919 To express time *HOW LONG* use the accusative.

Duās hōrās pugnāverunt.

They fought { *for two hours.*
during two hours.
two hours.

WHEN?

- 920 To express time *WHEN* use the ablative.

Quartō diē advēnērunt.

The fourth day } *they arrived.*
On the fourth day }

- 921 Note: With words not expressing time of themselves *in* is generally used.

In war

In bellō (But: Bellō Pūnicō secundō)

but in this time
his temporary

WITHIN?

- 922 To express time *WITHIN WHICH* use the ablative.

Quīnque diēbus veniet.

He will come { *in*
within } five days.

at the first attack - *primo impetu,*
post primum impetum,
etc.

HOW LONG AGO?

- 923 To express time *HOW LONG AGO* use *abhinc* with the accusative.

Abhinc annōs decem
Ten years ago

HOW LONG BEFORE OR AFTER?

- 924 To express time *HOW LONG BEFORE OR AFTER*:

1. Use ablative with *ante* or *post* as adverbs.

Multis post annis (post = adverb)
Many years afterwards

2. Use ablative together with *ante* or *post* as prepositions with accusative.

Paulo ante proelium (ante = preposition)
Shortly before the battle

Multis annis post mortem ejus (post = preposition)
Many years after his death

3. Use *ante* or *post* as prepositions with accusative.

Post multos annos (post = preposition)

PREPOSITIONS

- 925 Prepositional phrases are regularly used in Latin as ADVERBIAL phrases ONLY. In English prepositional phrases are frequently used as adjectival phrases. When translating an adjectival prepositional phrase into Latin, a verb must usually be added.

The war with the Gauls was difficult.

With the Gauls is an adjectival prepositional phrase because it modifies the NOUN *war*. Hence, a verb must be added in Latin.

Bellum cum Gallis gestum erat difficile.

The war waged with the Gauls was difficult.

(*With the Gauls* is now an adverbial phrase because it modifies the VERB *waged*.)

- 926 **Note:** Prepositional phrases, however, are frequently used as adjectives in Latin:

- 927 1. with nouns expressing an ACTION or an EMOTION.

Meam in tē voluntātem cognōvistī.

You know my good will towards you.

Fuga ab urbe subitō fit.

The flight from the city happens suddenly.

- 928 2. in expressions of time and place.

Post proelium in prōvinciā Caesar in Italiā contendit.

After the battle in the province Caesar hastened into Italy.

- 929 3. with the phrases introduced by **sine** or **cum**.
 Homō sine amicis beātus esse nōn potest.
A man without friends cannot be happy.
- 930 4. when the prepositional phrase expresses the whole (No. 692), the material, or the source [**dē**, **ex** (**ē**), **ab** (**ā**)].
 Ūnus ē militibus haec dīxit.
One of (from) the soldiers said this.
- 931 5. when the prepositional phrase can be enclosed between the noun and its modifier.
 Cicerōnis dē amīciā liber
Cicero's book about friendship
(Cicero's essay on friendship)

ab,¹ ā and the ablative:

- 932 1. *from* (of place or time).
 ab urbe, *from the city*
 ā pueritiā, *from boyhood*
- 933 2. *by* (agent).
 ā Caesare laudātus, *praised by Caesar*

ad and the accusative:

- 934 1. *to, towards*.
 ad urbem, *to the city*
- 935 2. *near, at*.
 ad Rōmam, *near Rome*
 ad flūmen, *at the river*
- 936 3. *till, toward* (of time).
 ad vesperum, *till evening*

¹Ā only before consonants; ab before any letter, but rarely before b, p, f, v, m.

- 937 4. *for* (purpose).
ventus ad nāvigandum idōneus, *a good breeze for sailing*

- 938 5. *about* (with numbers).
ad ducentōs, *about 200*

***adversus* and the accusative:**

- 939 1. *opposite, towards*.
adversus montem īre, *to go towards the mountain*
- 940 2. *against*.
adversus hostem, *against the enemy*
- 941 3. *towards* (of feelings, etc.).
Jūstitia etiam adversus infimōs servanda est.
Justice must be observed even towards the most lowly.

- 942 ***ante* and the accusative: *before* (of place or time).**
ante castra, *before (facing) the camp*
ante lūcem, *before dawn*

***apud* and the accusative:**

- 943 1. *among, in the presence of*.
Apud senātum verba fēcit.
He spoke in the presence of (before) the senate.
- 944 2. *in the works of*.
apud Cicerōnem, *in (the writings of) Cicero*
- 945 3. *at the house of*.
apud tē, *at your house*

- 946 *circā* and the accusative: *around, about* (of place or time).
circā flūmina, around rivers
circā eandem hōram, about the same hour
- 947 *circiter* and the accusative: *about*.
circiter merīdiem, about noon
- 948 *circum* and the accusative: *around* (of place).
circum forum, around the forum
circum eum, around him
- 949 *citrā* and the accusative; *cis* and the accusative: (*on*) *this side of*.
citrā Rhēnum, this side of the Rhine
cis Alpēs, this side of the Alps
- 950 *cōram* and the ablative: *in the presence of, before*.
cōram rēge, in the presence of the king
- cum* and the ablative:
- 951 1. *with* (accompaniment, union).
tēcum, with you
- 952 2. *with* (manner).
cum celeritāte, with speed
- dē* and the ablative:
- 953 1. *about, concerning, of* (subject matter).
Dē hāc rē locūtus sum. I spoke of this.

- 954 2. *down from, from.*
dē mūrō, *down from the wall*
- 955 3. *of, from (partitive).*
paucī dē nostrīs, *a few of our men*
- 956 4. *for, owing to, according to.*
quā dē causā, *and for this reason*
dē mōre, *according to custom*
- 957 *ergā and the accusative: towards, for (generally of friendly feelings).*
summa ergā nōs benevolentia, *great kindness towards us*
- ex,¹ ē and the ablative:*
- 958 1. *out of, from (of place, material, or time).*
ex urbe, *out of the city*
ex argillā factum, *made of clay*
ex illō diē, *from that day*
- 959 2. *of (partitive).*
ūnus ex captīvīs, *one of the captives*
- 960 *extrā and the accusative: outside (of).*
extrā finēs, *outside the border*
- in:*
- 961 1. *with the ablative: in, on (rest).*
in castrīs, *in the camp*
in ponte, *on the bridge*

¹Ē only before consonants; ex before any letter, but rarely before b, p, f, v, m.

2. with the accusative:

962

a. *into, onto* (motion).in Galliam, *into Gaul*in nāvēs, *onto the ships*

963

b. *for, till* (of time).Concilium in posterum diem distulit. *He put off the council till the next day.*in futūrum, *for the future*

964

c. *for, against*.amor in patriam, *patriotism*ōrātiō in Catilinam habita, *the speech against Catiline*

965

īnfrā and the accusative: *below, beneath*.*īnfrā* sīdera, *beneath the stars**inter* and the accusative:

966

1. *between* (of place).*inter* castra et flūmen, *between the camp and the river*

967

2. *among*.*Inter* omnēs cōstat. *It is agreed on among all.*

968

3. *during* (time).*inter* bellum, *during the war*

969

intrā and the accusative: *within* (motion, rest, time).*intrā* finēs esse, *to be within the borders*tēla *intrā* mūnitiōnēs conjicere, *to hurl darts within the defense works**intrā* decem diēs, *within ten days*

- 970 *jūxtā* and the accusative: *near*.
jūxtā arborem, near a tree
- ob* and the accusative:
- 971 1. *before* (of place).
ob oculōs versārī, to keep (be) before one's eyes
- 972 2. *for, on account of*.
ob hanc causam, for (on account of) this reason
- 973 *penes* and the accusative: *in the power of, under the control of*.
penes tē, in your power
- per* and the accusative:
- 974 1. *through, throughout* (of place or time).
per prōvinciam, through the province
per orbem terrārum, throughout the world
per hiemem, throughout (during) the winter
- 975 2. *through, by* (intermediate agent).
per explorātōrēs, through scouts
per nuntium, by a messenger
- 976 3. *through* (means).
per litterās cognōscere, to learn by means of a letter
- 977 4. *owing to* (cause).
Per annī tempus iter facere nōn possum. Owing to the season I cannot travel.
- 978 5. *by* (in oaths).
Per deōs jūrō. I swear by the gods.

post and the accusative:

- 979 1. *behind* (of place).
post castra, *behind the camp*
- 980 2. *after* (of time).
post proelium, *after the battle*

prae and the ablative:

- 981 1. *before* (in preference to).
prae omnibus, *before all*
- 982 2. *for* (preventing cause).
Prae timōre loquī nōn potuit. *He could not speak for fear.*
- 983 3. *in comparison with*.
Gallis prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est. *Our small stature is contemptible to the Gauls in comparison with their own size.*

praeter and the accusative:

- 984 1. *past, by, beyond* (of place).
praeter castra īre, *to go by the camp*
- 985 2. *contrary to, beyond, except*.
praeter cōsuētūdinem, *contrary to custom*
praeter modum, *beyond measure*
praeter tē nēmō, *no one except you*

prō and the ablative:

- 986 1. *before, in front of* (with back towards).
prō castrīs collocātus, *stationed before the camp*
- 987 2. *on behalf of*.
prō patriā morī, *to die for one's country*

- 988 3. *instead of, in place of.*
prō parente, *instead of a father*
- 989 4. *in return for.*
prō beneficiis, *in return for favors*
- 990 5. *in accordance with, in proportion to, in view of.*
prō tuā benevolentia, *in accordance with your kindness*
- 991 *prope* and the accusative: *near (to).*
prope mūrū, *near the wall*
- 992 *propter* and the accusative: *on account of, because of.*
propter timōrem, *because of fear*
- secundum* and the accusative:
- 993 1. *along.*
secundum flūmen, *along the river*
- 994 2. *after (following).*
secundum proelium, *after the battle*
- 995 3. *according to.*
secundum rei nātūrā, *according to the nature of the thing*
- 996 *sine* and the ablative: *without.*
sine veste, *without a garment*
sine spē, *without hope*

sub:

1. with the ablative:

- 997 a. *under* (place where, rest).
sub monte cōsīdere, *to encamp at the foot of the mountain*
sub arbore, *under a tree*
- 998 b. *towards* (of time).
sub vespere, *towards evening*

2. with the accusative:

- 999 a. *under* (motion).
sub jugum mittere, *to send under the yoke*
sub montem succēdere, *to come to the foot of the mountain*
- 1000 b. *at* (time).
sub noctem, *at (just before) nightfall*
- 1001 *super* and the accusative: *above* (motion, rest).
super rūpem stāre, *to stand above the cliff*
super terram volāre, *to fly above the earth*
- 1002 *suprā* and the accusative: *above, beyond*.
suprā sīdera, *above the stars*
- 1003 *tenus* (post-positive) and the ablative: *as far as*.
flūmine tenus, *as far as the river*

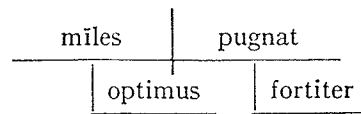
1004 *trāns* and the accusative: *across* (motion, rest).

Caesar exercitum trāns Rhēnum dūxit. *Caesar led his army across the Rhine.*

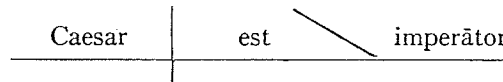
Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt. *The Germans dwell across the Rhine.*

METHOD OF DIAGRAMMING

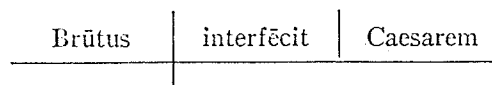
- 1005 1. Simple sentence: Miles optimus fortiter pugnat



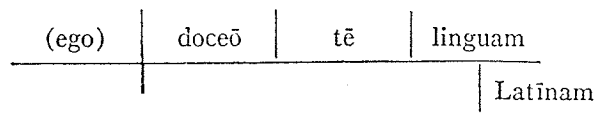
- 1006 2. Predicate noun or adjective: Caesar est imperātor.



- 1007 3. Direct object: Brūtus Caesarem interfēcit.

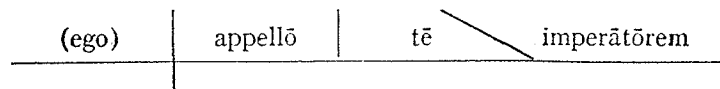


- 1008 4. Two accusative objects: Tē linguam Latīnam doceō.

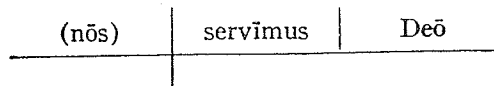


- 1009 5. Accusative object and predicate accusative:

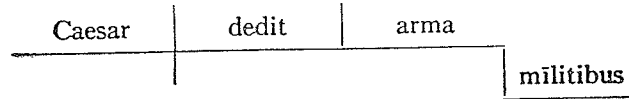
Tē imperātōrem appellō.



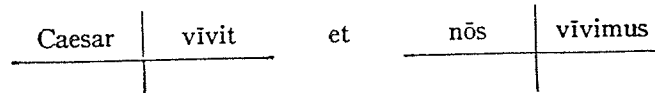
- 1010 6. Dative (genitive, ablative) object: Deō servīmus.



- 1011 7. Indirect object: Caesar arma mīlitibus dedit.



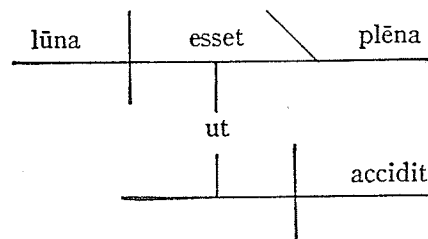
- 1012 8. Compound sentence: Caesar vīvit et nōs vīvimus.



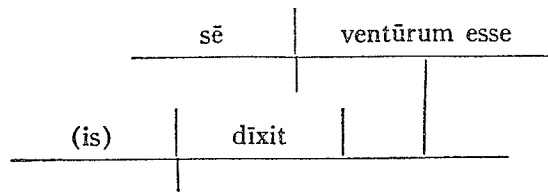
9. Complex sentences:

a. Noun clauses

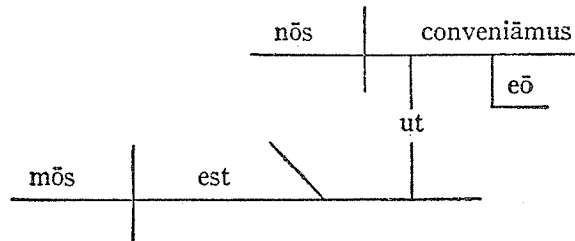
- 1013 1. *As subject*: Accidit ut lūna esset plēna.



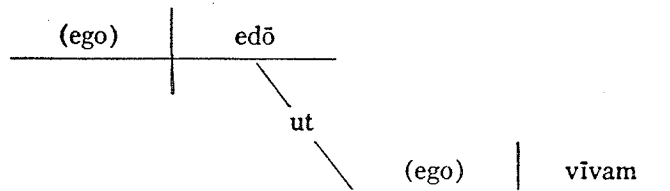
1014

2. *As object*: Dixit sē ventūrum esse.

1015

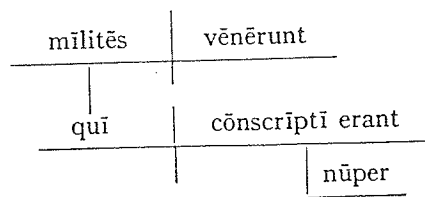
3. *As appositive*: Mōs est ut nōs eō conveniāmus.

1016

b. *Adverb clauses*: Edō ut vīvam.

1017

c. Adjective clauses: Militēs quī nūper cōscriptī
erant vēnērunt.





APPENDIX

PRONUNCIATION

1018 The Roman System.

Vowels: *Long*

ā as in *father* ;
ē as in *they* :
 (but without the faint
i sound at the end) ;
ī as in *machine* ;
ō as in *no* :
 (but without the faint
u sound at the end) ;
ū as in *rule* .
y (in borrowed Greek words) like German *ü* or French *u* .

Short

a as in *facility* ;
e as in *get* ;

i as in *fit* ;
o as in *obey* ;

u as in *put* .

Diphthongs :

<i>ae</i> like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> ; <i>oe</i> like <i>oi</i> in <i>foil</i> ; <i>au</i> like <i>ou</i> in <i>out</i> ;	<i>ei</i> like <i>ei</i> in <i>feign</i> ; <i>eu</i> like <i>ew</i> in <i>dew</i> ; <i>ui</i> like <i>we</i> .
---	--

Consonants :

Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English, but

<i>c</i> always as in <i>cat</i> ; <i>g</i> always as in <i>gun</i> ; <i>ngu</i> as in <i>unguent</i> ; <i>qu</i> as in <i>quit</i> ; <i>r</i> always as in <i>three</i> ; <i>j</i> (consonantal <i>i</i>) like <i>y</i> in <i>yet</i> ; <i>v</i> (consonantal <i>u</i>) like <i>w</i> in <i>well</i> ; <i>bs</i> and <i>bt</i> like English <i>ps</i> and <i>pt</i> .	<i>s</i> always as in <i>this</i> ; <i>su</i> as in <i>suave</i> ; <i>t</i> always as in <i>tin</i> ; <i>x</i> always as in <i>extra</i> ; <i>z</i> like <i>dz</i> in <i>adze</i> ;
---	---

Note: Double consonants are both pronounced but without a break, like the *ll* in English *tailless*. Thus:
bel-lum

1019 The Italian System.

Vowels:

In general as in the Roman pronunciation. However, some prefer to give all the vowels the *quality* of long vowels and to pronounce the short vowels more quickly.

Diphthongs:

As in the Roman pronunciation except:

ae and oe like the *e* in *they*.

Consonants:

Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English, but
c before *e, i, ae, oe* like the *ch* in *charity*;
ch before *e* or *i* like *k*;
cc before *e* or *i* like the *tch* in *match*;
sc before *e* or *i* like the *sh* in *she*;
g before *e, i, ae, oe* like the *j* in *just*;
gn like the *ni* in *onion*;
gg before *e* or *i* like the *dj* in *adjust*;
gh before *e* or *i* like the *g* in *game*;
gl before *i* like the *ll* in *million*;
h is silent, but between two vowels it is like English *k*;
r as in *three* (*i. e.*, trilled);
t before *i* and a vowel (except after *s, t, x*) = *ts*;
x (in words beginning *ex-* followed by a vowel, *h*, or *s*) = *gs*; otherwise *ks*.

Note: Double consonants are both pronounced but without a break like the *ll* in English *tailless*.

NOTES ON VERBS

1020 Irregular Imperatives.

dīcō	} have	dīc	} in the second person singular imperative active.
dūcō		dūc	
faciō		fac	
ferō		fer	

1021 Irregular Future Participles Active.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4, *intr.*, I arise:

oritūrus, a, um

morior, morī, mortuus sum, 3, *intr.*, I die:

moritūrus, a, um

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, 3, *intr.*, I am born:

nāscitūrus, a, um

ruō, ruere, ruī, rutus, 3, *intr.*, I fall, I rush:

ruitūrus, a, um

fruor, fruī, fructus sum, 3, *intr.*, I enjoy:

fruitūrus, a, um

pariō, parere, peperī, partus, 3, *tr.*, I bring forth:

paritūrus, a, um

sonō, sonāre, sonuī, sonitus, 1, *intr.*, I sound:

sonātūrus, a, um

secō, secāre, secuī, sectus, 1, *tr.*, I cut:

secātūrus, a, um

juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtus, 1, *tr.*, I help:

juvātūrus, a, um (but: adjūtūrus, a, um)

lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautus, 1, *tr.*, I wash:

lavātūrus, a, um

1022 Alternate Endings. The following are common:

-ēre for **-ērunt** in the third person plural perfect indicative active.

-re for **-ris** in the second person singular of all passive forms.

Cicero prefers **-ris** in the present indicative, but **-re** in the future indicative, present subjunctive, imperfect indicative, and imperfect subjunctive.

Shortened Forms.**1023** 1. Forms of the perfect tenses are sometimes shortened.

amāstī	}	for	amāvistī
dixtī			dixistī
amārunt			amāvērunt
amārō			amāverō
amārim			amāverim
audisse			audīvisse
audissem			audīvissem
dēlērunt			dēlēvērunt
dēlēsem			dēlēvissem, <i>etc.</i>

1024 2. Perfect stems in *iv* sometimes drop the *v* and shorten the *i*.

audierat	}	for	audīverat
petierat			petīverat, <i>etc.</i>

1025 **Dō.** The *a* is short in all forms of *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*, *I*, *tr.*, *give*, except in *dā* (the imperative) and in *dās* (second person singular present indicative active).

INDEX

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- ab (ā), 752, 764, 768, 916, 932-933
- abhinc, 923
- Ablative, 762-789
 - absolute, 912-914
 - accompaniment, 772-774
 - agent, 764
 - cause, 781-784
 - comparison, 777-780
 - degree of difference, 771
 - description, 697-699, 762
 - manner, 769
 - means, 765
 - object, 785
 - place, 915-916
 - position of, 466
 - price, 788-789
 - respect, 770
 - separation, 766-768
 - time, 920-922, 924
 - with adjectives, 766, 775-776
 - with prepositions, 932-933, 950-956, 958-959, 961, 981-983, 986-990, 996-998, 1003
- about, 938, 946, 947, 953
- above, 1001-1002
- Absolute, ablative, 912-914
- ac (atque), 608-610
 - ac si, 611
- Accent, 9-10
- Accompaniment, ablative of, 772-774
- according to, 956, 995
- Accusative, 745-761
 - cognate, 758
 - direct object, 745, 1007
 - double, 746-754, 1008
 - extent of space and time, 761, 919, 923-924
 - in exclamations, 759
 - of neuter pronouns and adjectives, 755-757
 - place to which, 917
 - predicate, 746, 1009
 - specification, 760
 - subject of infinitive, 893, 897
 - time, 761, 919, 923-924
 - with infinitive, 579, 3; 897-904
 - with prepositions, 934-949, 957, 960, 962-980, 984-985, 991-995, 999-1002, 1004
- acer, 80, 94-95
- across, 1004
- Active voice, 144, 160-239, 312-320
- ad, 712, 872, 917, 934-938
- adeō, 551
- Adjective clauses, 615-636, 1017
- Adjectives, 72-102, 845-859
 - ablative with, 766, 775-776
 - agreement, 474-478
 - attributive, 477-478, 866-867, 869
 - comparison, 89-102, 853-855
 - dative with, 742-743
 - declension, 72-88, 101-102
 - demonstrative, 133-136, 464, 794
 - genitive with, 722-723
 - gerundive as attributive, 866-867, 869
 - gerundive as predicate, 878-884
 - infinitive after, 906
 - intensive, 138, 808-810
 - interrogative, 141, 464, 503
 - irregular, 84-88
 - of first and second declensions, 72-76
 - of third declension, 77-83
 - participles used as, 309
 - position of, 464-465
 - possessive, 125-126, 131-132, 800, 802
 - predicate, 474-476, 878, 894, 900, 1006

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- relative, 139
- superlative, 92-102, 620, 856-859
- supine with, 863
- used as nouns, 693, 845-848
- used for English adverbs, 849
- verbal, 865-884, 907-914
- admoneō*, genitive with, 719
- Adverbial clauses, 546-614, 1016
- Adverbs, 103-111
 - comparison, 109-111
 - formation, 103-108
 - interrogative, 503
 - position of, 466
 - relative, 623
- Adversative clauses, 595-598, 628
- adversus*, 939-941
- aestimō*, genitive with, 702
- after*, 556, 980, 994
- against*, 940, 964
- Agent
 - ablative, 764
 - dative, 732, 882
 - intermediate, 975
 - living, 764
 - non-living, 765
- ager*, declension, 40, 42
- ago*, 923
- Agreement, 470-479
 - appositive, 473, 679
 - attributive adjective, 477-478
 - finite verb, 470-472
 - predicate adjective, 474-476, 894, 900
 - predicate noun, 473, 894
 - pronoun, 479, 619, 621
- ajō*, conjugation, 456-458
- aliquis*, 815
- aliquot*, 817
- alius*
 - declension, 85-86
 - syntax, 822, 825, 828, 839
- alius . . . alius*, 822, 839
- along*, 993
- Alphabet, 1
- alter*
 - declension, 87
 - syntax, 823-824, 826, 827
- alter . . . alter*, 839
- Alternate endings, 1022
- although*, 595-598
- ambō*, 838
- among*, 943, 967
- an*, 505, 507-508
 - annōn*, 505, 661
- ante*, 924, 942
- antequam*; *anteāquam*, 564-565
- anyone*; *any*, 841-844
- Appositive
 - agreement, 473, 679
 - position, 620
- aptus*, 635
- apud*, 943-945
- around*, 946, 948
- as far as*, 631-632, 1003
- as long as*
 - dum*, 569-570, 1003
 - quamdiū*; *quoad*, 571
- as soon as*, 556
- assis*, 703
- assuētus*, infinitive with, 906
- at*, 935, 1000
 - at the house of*, 945
- atque*. *See ac*
- Attributive adjectives, 477-478
- Attributive gerundive (for gerund), 870-877
- audāx*, comparison, 92
- audeō*, 345
- audiō*, conjugation, pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65
- because*, 572-576
- because of*, 580, 992

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- before*
 conjunction, 564-565
 preposition, 942, 950, 971, 981, 986
- behind*, 979
- bellum*, declension, 37
- below*, 965
- bene*, comparison, 111
- beneath*, 965
- between*, 966
- beyond*, 984, 985, 1002
- bonus*, comparison, 99
- by*, 933, 975, 978, 984
- capiō*, conjugation, 312-330
- Cardinal numerals, 112
- Case, 22, 677-789
 ablative, 762-789
 accusative, 29, 745-761
 dative, 725-744
 genitive, 680-724
 locative, 30, 915
 nominative, 677, 679
 vocative, 28, 678
- Causal clauses, 572-579, 627
- Cause, ablative of, 781-784
- cēdō*, dative with, 739-740
- cēlō*, double accusative, 751
- certus*, comparison, 92, 102
- ceterī*, 829
- Characteristic clauses, 633-636
- Charge, genitive of, 717
- circā*, 946
- circiter*, 947
- circum*, 948
- cis*, 949
- citrā*, 949
- Clauses
 adjective, 615-636, 1017
 adverbial, 546-614, 1016
 adversative, 595-598, 628
 causal, 572-579, 627
 characteristic, 633-636
 comparative, 599-612
 concessive, 467, 595-598
 conditional, 467, 581-594, 611-612, 614, 629, 669-674
 limiting relative, 630-632
 main, 498-519
 noun, 637-676, 898, 1013-1015
 position of, 467-468
 proviso, 594
 purpose, 468, 546-549, 625
quīn, 650-656
quod, 572-576, 579, 657-659
quōminus, 646-649
 relative, 615-636
 result, 467, 550-555, 626
sī, 581-593, 600, 669
 subordinate, 546-676
 temporal, 467, 556-571
 tenses in, 480-497, 520-545
ut, 637-639
- coepī*, conjugation, 430-435, 449-450
- Cognate accusative, 758
- Commands, 514-517
- commonefaciō*, genitive with, 719
- commoneō*, genitive with, 719
- Comparative adjectives
 declension of, 101-102
 formation of, 91, 95, 97-98, 99-100
 meaning, 853-855
- Comparative adverbs, 109, 111
- Comparative clauses, 599-612
- Comparison
 ablative of, 777-780
 clauses of, 599-612
 of adjectives, 89-102
 of adverbs, 109-111
- Complex sentences, 546-676
 diagrams of, 1013-1017
 tenses in subordinate clauses of, 520-545

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- Compound numerals, 119-122
 Compound sentence, diagram of, 1012
 Compound subject
 agreement of predicate adjective with, 475-476
 agreement of verb with, 471-472
 Compound verbs, dative after, 738
concerning, 953
 Concessive clauses, 595-598
 Concessive subjunctive, 519
 Conditional clauses (sentences), 581-594,
 611-612, 614, 629, 669-674
 contrary-to-fact, 583, 590-592, 612,
 614, 674
 expressing a wish, 594
 in indirect discourse, 669-674
 indicative in, 581, 590-591
 mixed, 592
 negatives in, 584-586, 588
 nothing implied, 581
 of comparison, 611-612
 relative, 629
 should-would, 582
 with gerundive and future participle,
 590
 with *possum*, *debeō*, *oportet*, 591
 Conjugation, 150, 159
 ajō, 456-458
 coepī, 430-435, 449-450
 deponent verbs, 334-344
 eō, 362-365, 375-380, 397
 ferō, 369-374, 386-396
 fiō, 366-368, 381-385
 first, pages 44, 46, 48, 50, 52, 56, 58,
 60, 62, 64
 four regular, 151, 159-306
 fourth, pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-54, 57,
 59, 61, 63, 65
 inquam, 452-455
 -iō verbs of the third, 311-330, 334-
 344
 irregular, 346-459
 mālō, 408-410, 425-429
 meminī, 436-442
 nōlō, 405-407, 419, 424
 ōdī, 443-448, 451
 possum, 398-401, 411-413
 quaesō, 459
 regular. *See* four regular
 second, pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-54, 57,
 59, 61, 63, 65
 semi-deponent, 345
 sum, 346-361
 third, regular, pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-
 54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65
 third in *-iō*, 311-330, 334-344
 volō, 402-404, 414-418
 Consonants, pronunciation, 5, 1018-1019
contentus, ablative with, 776
 Continental pronunciation, 2-13
 Contraction, in perfect active, 1024
contrary to, 985
 Contrary-to-fact conditions, 583, 590-
 592, 612, 614, 674
convenit, infinitive with, 892
coram, 950
Cost, 788-789
crēditur, infinitive with, 903
cum, conjunction
 although, 596
 since, 578
 when, 542, 559-563
cum, preposition, 769, 772-773, 951, 952
cum inversum, 562
cum primum, 556
cupiō, infinitive with, 640; 893, 1
cūrō, with gerundive, 883-884
 Dative, 725-744
 agency, 732-734, 882
 double, 731
 ethical, 727

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- indirect object, 736-737, 1011
- limit of motion, 735
- possession, 725
- purpose, 729-730
- reference, 726-728
- with adjectives, 742-743
- with verbs, 738-740, 744, 1010
- dē, 692, 766, 916, 953-956
- dē vī, 718
- Declension, 23
 - adjectives, 72-88
 - comparative, 101
 - demonstrative, 133-136
 - intensive, 138
 - interrogative, 141
 - irregular, 84-88
 - of first and second declensions, 72-76
 - of third declension, 77-83
 - possessive, 126, 131
 - relative, 139
 - superlative, 102
 - nouns, 25-71
 - fifth declension, 69-71
 - first declension, 31-33
 - fourth declension, 65-68
 - second declension, 34-44
 - third declension, 45-64
 - numerals, 114-118
 - participles, 307-310
 - pronouns, 123-141
 - demonstrative, 133-137
 - intensive, 138
 - interrogative, 140
 - personal, 123-124, 127-128
 - possessive, 125-126, 131-132
 - relative, 139
- Degree of difference, ablative of, 771
- Deliberative questions, 517-518
- Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns, 133-137, 790-799
- Deponent verbs, 334-344
 - conjugation, 335-344
 - gerundive, 876
 - perfect participle active, 910
 - semi-deponent, 345
- Description
 - ablative of, 697-699, 762
 - genitive of, 695-696, 699
- Descriptive genitive, 695-696, 699
- dēterior, comparison, 100
- Deus, declension, 44
- Diagramming, 1005-1017
- dīc, 1020
- dīes, 70-71
- Difference, ablative of degree of, 771
- difficilis, superlative, 96
- dignus
 - ablative with, 776
 - characteristic clause with, 635
- diligēns
 - comparison, 92
 - declension, 82
- Diphthongs, pronunciation of, 4, 1018-1019
- Direct object, 745, 1007
- Direct questions, 502-508
- Direct reflexive, 803
- Discourse, indirect, 663-676
- displaceō, 740
- dissimilis, superlative, 96
- diū, comparison, 111
- Division into syllables, 6-8
- dō, 1025
 - gerundive with, 883-884
- domus
 - declension, 67
 - in expressions of place, 915-917
 - locative, 30, 68, 915
- dōnec, 564
- Double accusative, 746-754, 1008-1009
- Double dative, 731

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- Double questions, 504-505
down from, 918, 954
dubitāre, 655-656
 nōn dubitō, 653
dubium nōn est, 653
dubius, comparison, 98
ducentī, declension, 118
dūcō, genitive with, 702
 dūc, 1020
dum
 as long as, 569-570
 provided only, 594
 until, 564
 while, 569-570
dummodo, 594
duo, declension, 115
during, 968
- ē*. See *ex*
each, 831-840
ecquis, 842
ego, declension, 123
 Emotion, expressions of, 579; 714; 782;
 893, 1; 927
 Endings, 23
 alternate, 1022
 case in nouns, 24-27
 person in verbs, 160-161, 240, 1022
eō
 conjugation, 362-365, 375-380
 passive forms, 397
-ēre for *-ērunt*, 1022
ergā, 957
 Ethical dative, 727
etiāmsī, 598
etsī, 598
ex (*ē*), 692, 752, 768, 916, 958-959
except, 985
 Exclamations
 accusative in, 759
 infinitive in, 904
 Explanatory genitive, 681-682
 Extent of space and time, 761
 exterior, comparison, 100
 extrā, 960
 extrēmus, 100
- facilis*, comparison, 96-97, 110
faciō, genitive with, 702
 fac, 1020
 facere nōn possum quīn, 653
 ferī nōn potest quīn, 653
 fiō, 366-368, 381-385
 Fearing, noun clauses of, 642-644
ferō, conjugation, 369-374, 386-396
 fer, 1020
fidō, 345
 Fifth declension, 69-71
 Finite verb, agreement of, 470-472
fiō, conjugation, 366-368, 381-385
 ferī nōn potest quīn, 653
 First and second declension adjectives,
 72-76
 First and second persons, pronouns of,
 123-126, 800
 First conjugation, pages 44, 46, 48, 50,
 52, 56, 58, 60, 62, 64, 72-74
 First declension, 31-33
flocē, 703
fūmen, declension, 64
for, 937, 956-957, 963-964, 972, 982
 Formation
 of adverbs, 103-108
 of comparatives, 88-102, 109-110
 Fourth conjugation, pages 45, 47, 49,
 51, 53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65, 72-74
 Fourth declension, 65-68
frētus, ablative with, 776
from, 918, 932, 954, 955, 958
fruor
 ablative with, 785-787
 irregular future participle, 1021

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- fungor, ablative with, 785-787
 Future infinitive, 887, 899
 Future participle, 156, 887
 as predicate adjective, 534
 in conditional sentences, 590
 irregular, 1021
 Future perfect tense, 496-497
 Future tense, 489-491

 gaudeō, 345, 579, 782
 Gender, 15-18
 fifth declension, 70
 first declension, 32-33
 fourth declension, 66
 second declension, 35, 38
 third declension, 46-52
 Genitive, 680-724
 descriptive, 695-696, 699
 explanatory, 681-682
 objective, 684-685
 of indefinite value, 700-705
 of price, 705
 of the charge, 717
 partitive, 686-694
 plural of third declension, 59-63; 64, 1
 possessive, 680, 811
 subjective, 683
 with adjectives, 722-723
 with present participle, 724
 with verbs, 706-721
 Gerund, 864
 changed to gerundive, 870-877
 Gerundive, 865-884
 after ad or causā, 872
 as attributive adjective, 866-867, 869
 as predicate adjective, 878-884
 dative of agency with, 882
 deponent verbs in, 876
 for gerund, 870-877
 impersonal use of, 881
 in conditional sentences, 590
 of fruor, fungor, potior, ūtor, 875
 of obligation or necessity, 878-882
 to express purpose, 872
 gracilis, superlative, 96
 granted that, 519, 596-597
 gravior, declension, 101
 gravis
 comparison, 92, 101
 declension, 78

 habeō, genitive with, 702
 hic
 declension, 133
 syntax, 791-795
 Historical infinitive, 499, 905
 Historical perfect, 492
 Historical present, 541
 Hortatory subjunctive, 518
 hortor, conjugation, 334-344
 humilis, superlative, 96
 humus, 915-916

 i-stems, third declension neuter, 64, 1
 idem
 declension, 137
 syntax, 813-814
 idem . . . ac (atque), 608
 idem . . . quī, 608
 idōneus, 635
 ille
 declension, 134
 syntax, 791-798
 Imperative mood, 146, 515
 irregular, 1020
 position, 462
 Imperfect tense, 486-488
 imperō, dative with, 739-740
 Impersonal gerundive, 881
 Impersonal verbs, 331-333, 638, 714-716,
 892
 Implied indirect discourse, 675-676

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- im**, 100, 851
- in**
 with ablative, 915, 921, 961
 with accusative, 917, 962-964
- in*, 918, 961
 in accordance with, 990
 in comparison with, 983
 in front of, 986
 in place of, 988
 in preference to, 981
 in proportion to, 990
 in return for, 989
 in the power of, 973
 in the presence of, 943, 950
 in the works of, 944
 in view of, 990
- Indefinite value, genitive of, 700-705
- Indicative mood, 146, 498
 meaning of tenses of, 480-497
- indignus**
 ablative with, 776
 characteristic clause with, 635
- Indirect discourse, 663-676
 conditional sentences in, 669-674
 implied, 675-676
 rhetorical questions in, 666
 subordinate clauses in, 665-667, 676
- Indirect object, 736-737
- Indirect question, 534, 655, 660-662
- Indirect reflexive, 804-805
- inferior**, comparison, 100
- infirmus**, 100, 851
- Infinitive, 885-906
 accusative with, 897-904
 after adjectives, 906
 future, 158, 887, 899
 historical, 499, 905
 in exclamations, 904
 in noun constructions, 889-896
 perfect, 886, 899
 present, 151, 499, 885, 896
 subject of, 893
 tenses of, 885-887
- infrā**, 965
- inquam**, conjugation, 452-455
- instead of*, 988
- integer**, declension, 76
- Intensive adjective and pronoun, 138, 808-812
- inter**, 966-968
- interest**, genitive with, 709-713
- interior**, 100, 851
- Intermediate agent, 975
- Interrogative adjective, 141, 464, 503
- Interrogative pronoun, 140, 503
- intimus**, 100, 851
- into*, 918, 962
- intrā**, 969
- Intransitive verbs in passive, 741
- iō** verbs, third conjugation, 311-330, 334-344
- ipse**
 declension, 138
 syntax, 808-812
- Irregular adjectives, 84-88
- Irregular comparison
 of adjectives, 99-100
 of adverbs, 111
- Irregular imperatives, 1020
- Irregular verbs, 346-459
- is**
 declension, 128
 demonstrative, 135, 791-794
 omission of, 617
 personal, 128-130, 796-797
 syntax, 791-794, 796-797
- iste**
 declension, 136
 syntax, 791-794, 799
- ita**, 551
 ita . . . quemadmodum, 601
- Italian system of pronunciation, 1019

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- jubeō, 640; 893, 1; 895
 Jussive subjunctive, 514, 516-517
 juvātūrus, 1021
 juvenis, comparison, 99
 juxtā, 970
- lātē, comparison, 110
 laudō, conjugation, pages 44, 46, 48, 50,
 52, 56, 58, 60, 62, 64
 lavātūrus, 1021
 lēx, declension, 57
 licet
 conjunction, 597
 verb, 333, 640-641, 892
 Limit of motion, dative of, 735
 Limiting clauses, 630-632
 Locative, 30, 68, 915
- magnōpere, comparison, 111
 magnus
 comparison, 99
 declension, 72
 magnī, 701
 Main clauses, 498-519, 1005-1012
 male, comparison, 111
 mālō
 conjugation, 398, 408-410, 425-429
 infinitive with, 640; 893, 1
 malus, comparison, 99
 Manner, ablative of, 769
 maximī, 701
 Meaning
 of comparative adjectives, 853-855
 of indicative tenses, 480-497
 of subjunctive, 188-193
 of superlative adjectives, 856
 Means, ablative of, 765
 medius, 851
 meminī
 conjugation, 436-442
 genitive with, 706-707
- meus, 125-126, 800
 vocative, 28
 with gerundive, 877
 mille; milia, declension, 117
 minimī, 701
 minōris, 701, 705, 789
 miser
 comparison, 94-95
 declension, 75
 miseret, 714-716
 mittō, conjugation, pages 45, 47, 49, 51,
 53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65
 modo, 594
 mōlior, conjugation, 334-344
 moneō, conjugation, pages 45, 47, 49,
 51, 53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65
 Mood, 146
 imperative, 462, 515, 1020
 indicative, 480-497, 498
 subjunctive, 188-193, 500-501, 510-
 514, 516-519
 moritūrus, 1021
 multus, comparison, 99
 multī, comparison, 99
 multum, comparison, 111
 syntax, 852
- nāscor
 ablative with, 768
 nāscitūrus, 1021
 nātū maximus; minimus, 99
 nē, 511-514, 516-519, 546-547, 596, 637,
 642, 645, 647-649
 nē nōn, 642-643
 nē quid; nē quis, 549
 nē umquam, 549
 -ne, 503, 661
 -ne . . . an, 505
 near, 935, 970, 991
 necesse est, 641, 892
 necne, 661

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- nēcubi**, 549
 Negative commands, 516
nēmō, partitive genitive, 689
nesciōqui; **nesciōquis**, 819
neu, 548
neuter, declension, 88
 Neuter adjectives and pronouns, accusative of as object, 755-757
 Neuter nouns
 second declension, 37-39
 third declension, 64
nēve, 548
nihilī, 703
nimis, with partitive genitive, 690
nisi, 542, 584
noceō, dative with, 739-740
nōlō
 conjugation, 398, 405-407, 419-424
 nōlī; **nōlīte**, 516
 with infinitive, 516; 640; 893, 1
 Nominative absolute, English, 913
 Nominative case, 677, 679
nōn dubitō, 653
nōn multum, 111
 nōn multum abest quīn, 653
nōn quō; **nōn quod**, 574
nōnne, 503, 661
nōnnūllī, 816
nōs, 123, 800
noster, 125-126, 800, 877
not because, 574
 Noun clauses, 637-676, 898, 1013-1015
 Noun constructions, infinitive in, 889-896
 Nouns, 14-71
 case of, 22, 28-30
 declension of, 23-71
 expressing emotion, 927
 gender of, 15-18, 32-33, 35, 38, 46-52, 66, 70
 implying action, 684-685, 927
 infinitive used as, 889
 participles used as, 308
 predicate, 473, 894, 1006
 stem of, 24, 27
 verbal, 864, 888-906
novus, comparison, 99
nullus, 84, 689
num, 503, 661
 Number, 19-21, 148
 Numerals, 112-122
 cardinal, 112
 compound, 119-122
 declension, 114-118
 ordinal, 113
nūper, comparison, 111
ob, 783, 971-972
 Object
 ablative, 785, 1010
 accusative, 745-754
 dative, 738-741, 1010
 direct, 745, 1007
 genitive, 706, 719-721, 1010
 indirect, 736-737, 1011
 Objective genitive, 684-685
oblīvīscī, genitive with, 706
ōdī, conjugation, 443-448, 451
of, 953, 955, 959
on, 961
 on account of, 972, 992
 on behalf of, 987
 on this side of, 949
one, 824-826
 one . . . other (another), 822-823
onto, 962
oportet, 641, 892
opposite, 939
 Order of words, 460-469
 Ordinal numerals, 113
orior, ablative with, 768
oritūrus, 1021

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- other*, 827-830
out of, 918, 958
outside, 960
owing to, 956, 977
- paenitet*, 714-716, 892
parātus, infinitive with, 906
parcō, dative with, 739-740
paritūrus, 1021
pars, declension, 58
particeps, genitive with, 723
Participle, 907-914
 as adjective, 309
 as noun, 308
 declension, 307-310
 future, 156, 534, 590, 887, 1021
 perfect active, 910, 914
 perfect passive, 155-158, 733, 886
 present, 724, 885
 tenses of, 885-887, 908-909
partim, with partitive genitive, 690
Partitive genitive, 686-694
parum, 111, 690
parvus, comparison, 99
parvī, 701
Passive voice, 145, 240-306, 322-330
 double accusative, 747, 749-750, 753-754
 forms of *eō*, 397
 personal signs of, 240-241, 1022
 verbs used impersonally in, 332, 741, 901
past, 984
patior
 conjugation, 334-344
 with infinitive, 893, 1
penes, 973
per, 974-978
Perfect, historical, 492
Perfect participle, 155-158, 886, 910, 914
Perfect stem, 154
Perfect tense, 492-493
 alternate ending, 1022
 sequence after, 537, 540-541
 shortened forms, 1023-1024
permagnī, 701
Person, 123-132, 149
Personal endings, 160-161, 240-241, 1022
Personal pronouns, 123-124, 127-130
persuādeō, dative with, 739-740
piġet, 714-716, 892
Place, expressions of, 735, 915-917, 928
placeō, dative with, 739-740
 placet, infinitive with, 892
plēnus, 723, 776
Pluperfect tense, 494-495
plūs, 99, 111
 plūris, 701, 705, 789
portus, declension, 65
Position
 ablatives, 466
 adjectives, 464-465
 adverbs, 466
 imperative, 462
 subordinate clauses, 467-468
 sum, 461
 unusual, 469
 verb, 460-462
 vocative, 463
Possession, dative of, 725
Possessive adjectives, 125-126, 131-132, 465, 800, 802, 811
Possessive genitive, 680, 811
Possessive pronouns, 125-126, 131-132
Possible wishes, 511
possum, conjugation, 398-401, 411-413
post, 924, 979-980
posteāquam, 556
posterior, comparison, 100
postquam, 556, 558
postrēmus, 100, 851
Potential subjunctive, 500-501

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- potior**, 721, 785, 875
prae, 784, 981-983
praestat, infinitive with, 892
praeter, 984-985
Predicate accusative, 746, 1009
Predicate adjective
 agreement of, 474-476, 894, 900
 gerundive as, 878-884
Predicate noun, 473, 894, 1006
Prepositional phrases, 925-931
Prepositions, 925-1004
Present, historical, 492, 541
Present perfect, 493, 540
Present stem, 153
Present tense, 483-485, 492-493
Price, ablative of, 788-789
Primary sequence, 525, 527-530, 536
Primary tenses, 524
prīmus, 100, 850-851
Principal parts, 152-158
prior, comparison, 100
priusquam, 564-565
prō, 986-990
prohibeō, 649
Pronouns, 123-141, 790-844
 agreement, 479
 demonstrative, 133-137, 790-799
 intensive, 138, 808-812
 interrogative, 140, 503
 personal, 123-124, 127-130
 possessive, 125-126, 131-132
 reciprocal, 839-840
 reflexive, 800-807, 890
 relative, 139, 615-622, 778
Pronunciation
 continental, 2-13
 Italian, 1019
 Roman, 1018
prope
 adverb, 111
 preposition, 991
propinquus, comparison, 99
propter, 580, 783, 992
prosum, dative with, 739-740
pudet, 714-716, 892
puer, declension, 40, 43
Purpose
 clauses, 546-549, 625
 dative of, 729-730
 expressed by gerundive, 872
 expressed by supine, 860
putō, genitive with, 702
quaerō, 661, 752
quaesō, conjugation, 459
quam sī, 611
quam ut, 553
quamdiū, 571
quamquam, 595
quamvis, 596
quandō; quandōquidem, 577
quantī, 701, 705, 789
Quantity of syllables, 11, 13
quantum, 632
quasi, 611
quātenus, 632
Questions
 deliberative, 509-510
 direct, 502-508
 double, 504-505
 indirect, 534, 655, 660-662
 rhetorical, 666
quī
 declension, 139
 in indirect questions, 661
 indefinite adjective, 841
 interrogative adjective, 141
 syntax, 546, 550, 615-635
quī modo, 630
quī quidem, 630
quīa, 572-573
quīdam, 820-821

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- quīlibet, 844
- quīn, 552, 647-654
- quis
 - declension, 140
 - indefinite pronoun, 841
- quispiam, 818
- quisquam, 843
- quisque, 831-835
- quīvis, 844
- quō, 546-547, 623, 691
 - quō . . . eō, 607
- quoad, 564, 571, 632
- quod
 - as far as*, 631
 - because*, 572-576, 579
 - the fact that*, 657-659
- quōminus, 646-649
- quoniam, 572-573

- Reason, rejected, 574-575
- recentior, 99
- Reciprocal pronouns, 839-840
- recordor, 708
- recūsō, 648
- Reference, dative of, 726-728
- refert, genitive with, 709-713
- Reflexive pronouns, 127, 800-807, 890
 - direct, 803
 - indefinite, 890
 - indirect, 804-805
 - possessive, 131, 802-807
- Rejected reason, 574-575
- Relation, tense by, 885-887
- Relative adjective, 139, 615
- Relative adverbs, 623
- Relative clauses, 615-636
 - adversative, 628
 - causal, 627
 - characteristic, 633-636
 - conditional, 629
 - introduced by adverbs, 623
 - limiting, 630-632
 - purpose, 625
 - result, 626
- Relative pronoun
 - agreement, 616, 619, 621
 - clauses introduced by, 615-636
 - declension, 139
- reliquus, 851
 - reliquī, 830
- rēs, declension, 69
 - rērum potīrī, 721
- resistō, dative with, 739-740
- Respect
 - ablative of, 770
 - expressed by supine, 861-863
- Result clauses, 534, 550-555, 626
- Rhetorical questions, 666
- Roman system of pronunciation, 1018
- ruitūrus, 1021
- rūs, 30, 917
 - rūre, 916
 - rūrī, 915

- saepe, comparison, 111
- satis, partitive genitive, 690
- secātūrus, 1021
- Second conjugation, pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65, 72-74
- Second declension, 34-44
- Second person
 - alternate endings, 1022
 - commands in, 515-517
 - indefinite in potential subjunctive, 501
 - pronouns of, 124-125, 800
- Secondary sequence, 526, 531-534, 537
- Secondary tenses, 524
- secundum, 993-995
- Semi-deponent verbs, 345
- senex, comparison, 99
- Sense, tense by, 521-523
- Sentences, diagrams of, 1005-1017

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- Separation
 ablative of, 766-768
 dative with verbs of, 744
 Sequence, tense by, 524-541
 sequor, conjugation, 334-344
 serviō, dative with, 739-740
 servus, declension, 34
 seu . . . seu, 589
 Shortened verb forms, 1023
 sī, 581-593, 669
 sī minus, 588
 sī modo, 594
 sī . . . nōn, 585-586, 588
 Signs, personal, 160-161, 240-241, 1022
 similis, superlative of, 96
 simul ac (atque), 556
 sīn; sīn autem, 587
 sīn aliter; sīn minus, 588
since, 578
 sine, 929, 996
 singulī, 836
 sinō, with infinitive, 893, 1; 895
 sīquidem, 577
 sive . . . sive, 589
 soleō, 345
 sōlus, 84, 635, 850
some, 815-821
 some . . . others, 822
 Specification
 ablative of, 770
 accusative of, 760
 Statements, 498, 542-545
 Stem
 of nouns, 24, 27
 of verbs, 153-158
 studeō, 640, 739-740
 sub, 997-1000
 Subject
 of finite verb, 677
 of infinitive, 893, 897, 904
 Subjective genitive, 683
 Subjunctive mood, 146, 188-193
 by attraction, 613-614
 concessive, 519
 hortatory, 518
 in deliberative questions, 510
 in indirect questions, 662
 in subordinate clauses, 546-547, 550-555, 561, 567-568, 573-574, 578-579, 582-589, 592, 594, 596-597, 611-614, 625-631, 633-655, 662, 665
 in wishes, 511-513, 594
 jussive, 514, 516-517
 meaning of tenses of, 188-193
 potential, 500-501
 Subordinate clauses, 546-676
 diagrams, 1013-1017
 position of, 467-468
 tenses in, 520-545
 suī
 declension, 127
 syntax, 801, 803-807, 890
 sum
 conjugation, 346-361
 gerundive with, 878-882
 position of, 461
 summus, 100, 851
 super, 1001
 superior, comparison, 100
 Superlative adjectives
 declension of, 102
 formation of, 90, 92-94, 96, 98-100
 meaning and use of, 93, 856-859
 Superlative adverbs, 110-111
 Supine, 157, 860-863
 suprā, 1002
 suscipiō, gerundive with, 883-884
 suus, 131, 802-807, 877
 Syllables
 division into, 6-8
 quantity of, 11-13
 Syntax, 460-1004

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- taedet, 714-715
 tālis, 551
 tālis . . . quālis, 604
 tam, 551
 tam . . . quam, 602
 tametsī, 598
 tamquam; tamquam sī, 611
 tantī, 701, 705, 789
 tantus, 551
 tantō . . . quantō, 607
 tantus . . . quantus, 603
 Temporal clauses, 467, 556-571
 Tense, 147, 480-497, 520-545
 by relation, 885-887
 by sense, 521-523
 by sequence, 524-541
 in general statements, 542-545
 in subordinate clauses, 520-545, 667
 meaning of in indicative, 480-497, 521
 meaning of in subjunctive, 188-193, 522-523
 of infinitives, 885-887
 of participles, 885-887
 primary, 524-525, 527-530, 536
 secondary, 526, 531-534, 537-541
 table of, 482
 tenus, 1003
 terra, declension, 31
 Third conjugation, pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65
 deponent verbs, pages 72-74
 -iō verbs, 311-330, 336-344
 Third declension
 adjectives, 77-83
 nouns, 45-64
 Third person, pronouns of, 127-128, 131-132, 801-807, 812
 this side of, 949
 through, 918, 974-976
 throughout, 974
 till, 936, 963
 Time
 expressed by verbs, 480-497
 expressions of, 919-924, 928
 extent of, 767
 to, 918, 934
 tot . . . quot, 605
 totiēs . . . quotiēs, 606
 tōtus, declension, 84
 toward, 936
 towards, 735, 934, 939, 941, 957, 998
 trādō, gerundive with, 883-884
 trādūcere, double accusative, 748-749
 trājicere, double accusative, 748-749
 trāns, 750, 1004
 trānsportāre, double accusative, 748-749
 trēs, declension, 116
 tū, 124, 800
 tuus, 125-126, 800, 877
 ubi, 542, 556, 623
 ubi primum, 556
 ūllus, 84, 843
 ulterior, comparison, 100
 ultimus, 100, 850-851
 under, 997, 999
 under the control of, 973
 until, 564
 ūnus
 declension, 114
 syntax, 635, 857
 ūnusquisque, 836
 ut, 546, 550, 556, 596, 637-639, 642-643
 quam ut, 553
 sic . . . ut, 601
 ut nē, 637
 ut nōn, 550, 552, 637, 652
 ut primum, 556
 ut sī, 611
 uter, 88, 689
 uterque, 837
 utinam, 511-513

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- ūtor, 785-787, 875
 utrum . . . an, 505

 vel, 859
 velut, 601, 611
 velut sī, 611
 Verbs
 ablative with, 785
 agreement of, 470-472
 compound, 738
 conjugation of, 150, 159, 162-459
 contractions in, 1024
 dative with, 738-740
 deponent, 334-344, 876, 910
 genitive with, 700, 705, 721
 impersonal, 331-333, 715-716, 892
 intransitive, 739-741, 755-756, 758, 881
 -iō of third conjugation, 311-330
 irregular, 346-459
 notes on, 1020-1025
 of accusing, 717
 of asking, 751-754
 of bewaring, 645
 of buying and selling, 705, 788
 of calling, 746
 of emotion, 549, 714-716
 of fearing, 642-644
 of hindering and preventing, 646, 647, 654
 of motion, 729
 of saying, thinking, and the like, 663, 675, 897-903
 of separation, 766-768
 of teaching, 751, 753-754
 of valuing, 700-704
 position of, 460-462
 semi-deponent, 345
 shortened forms, 1023-1024
 tenses of, 480-497, 520-545
 transitive, 745-754, 757, 880
 used impersonally, 716, 741, 881, 901
 used personally, 880, 895, 902
 vereor
 conjugation, 334-344
 infinitive with, 644
 vescor, ablative with, 785, 787
 vester, 125-126, 800, 877
 vetō, with infinitive, 893, 1; 895
 vetus, 83, 99
 videor, with infinitive, 903
 vidētur mihi, 903
 vir, declension, 40-41
 Vocative, 28, 36, 463, 678
 Voice, 143-145
 active, 160-239, 312-321
 passive, 240-306, 322-330
 volō, 398
 conjugation, 402-404, 414-418
 infinitive with, 640; 893; 893, 1
 vōs, 124, 800
 Vowels, pronunciation of, 2-3, 1018-1019

when
 cum, 559-563
 time when, 920-921
 ubi; ut, 556
whence, 623, 916
where, 623, 915
while, 569-570
whither, 623, 917
 Wishes, 511-513, 594
with, 951-952
within, 969
without, 996
 Words, order of, 460-469